



# National Health Service Act 1977

## 1977 CHAPTER 49

### PART I

#### SERVICES AND ADMINISTRATION

##### *Functions of the Secretary of State*

#### **1 Secretary of State's duty as to health service.**

- (1) It is the Secretary of State's duty to continue the promotion in England and Wales of a comprehensive health service designed to secure improvement—
- (a) in the physical and mental health of the people of those countries, and
  - (b) in the prevention, diagnosis and treatment of illness,
- and for that purpose to provide or secure the effective provision of services in accordance with this Act.
- (2) The services so provided shall be free of charge except in so far as the making and recovery of charges is expressly provided for by or under any enactment, whenever passed.

#### **2 Secretary of State's general power as to services.**

Without prejudice to the Secretary of State's powers apart from this section, he has power—

- (a) to provide such services as he considers appropriate for the purpose of discharging any duty imposed on him by this Act; and
- (b) to do any other thing whatsoever which is calculated to facilitate, or is conducive or incidental to, the discharge of such a duty.

This section is subject to section 3(3) below.

*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C1** S. 2: transfer of functions (E.) (1.4.2001) by S.I. 2001/747, regs. 2(1), 3, 4, **Sch. 1**
- C2** S. 2: functions of local authority not to be responsibility of an executive of the authority (1.4.2000) by virtue of S.I.2000/695, reg. 3(2)(a), **Sch. 1**

### 3 Services generally.

- (1) It is the Secretary of State's duty to provide throughout England and Wales, to such extent as he considers necessary to meet all reasonable requirements—
- (a) hospital accommodation;
  - (b) other accommodation for the purpose of any service provided under this Act;
  - (c) medical, dental, nursing and ambulance services;
  - (d) such other facilities for the care of expectant and nursing mothers and young children as he considers are appropriate as part of the health service;
  - (e) such facilities for the prevention of illness, the care of persons suffering from illness and the after-care of persons who have suffered from illness as he considers are appropriate as part of the health service;
  - (f) such other services as are required for the diagnosis and treatment of illness.

[<sup>F1</sup>(1A) The Secretary of State may provide or secure the provision of anything mentioned in subsection (1) above outside England and Wales.]

- (2) Where any hospital provided by the Secretary of State in accordance with this Act was a voluntary hospital transferred by virtue of the <sup>M1</sup>National Health Service Act 1946, and—
- (a) the character and associations of that hospital before its transfer were such as to link it with a particular religious denomination, then
  - (b) regard shall be had in the general administration of the hospital to the preservation of that character and those associations.
- (3) Nothing in section 2 above or in this section affects the provisions of Part II of this Act (which relates to arrangements with practitioners for the provision of medical, dental, ophthalmic and pharmaceutical services).

#### Textual Amendments

- F1** S. 3(1A) inserted (29.11.2002) by The National Health Service Act 1977 and National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990 (Amendment) Regulations 2002 (S.I. 2002/2759), **reg. 3(1)**

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C3** S. 3(1)(a)-(f): functions of local authority not to be responsibility of an executive of the authority (1.4.2000) by virtue of S.I. 2000/695, reg. 3(2)(a), **Sch. 1**
- C4** S. 3(1)(a)-(f): transfer of functions (E.) (1.4.2001) by S.I. 2001/747, regs. 2(1), 3, 4, **Sch. 1**

#### Marginal Citations

- M1** 1946 c. 81.

*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### [<sup>F2</sup>4 High security psychiatric services.

- (1) The duty imposed on the Secretary of State by section 1 above to provide services for the purposes of the health service includes a duty to provide hospital accommodation and services for persons who are liable to be detained under the <sup>M2</sup>Mental Health Act 1983 and in his opinion require treatment under conditions of high security on account of their dangerous, violent or criminal propensities.
- (2) The hospital accommodation and services mentioned in subsection (1) above are in this Act referred to as "high security psychiatric services".
- (3) High security psychiatric services shall be provided only at hospital premises at which services are provided only for the persons mentioned in subsection (1) above; and for this purpose "hospital premises" means—
  - (a) a hospital; or
  - (b) any part of a hospital which is treated as a separate unit.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F2** S. 4 substituted (1.4.2000 for E.W.) by 1999 c. 8, s. 41(1); S.I. 1999/2793, art. 2(3)(a), Sch. 3

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C5** S. 4: transfer of functions (E.) (1.4.2001) by S.I. 2001/747, regs. 2(1), 3, 4, Sch. 1

#### Marginal Citations

**M2** 1983 c.20.

#### 5 Other services.

- (1) It is the Secretary of State's duty—
  - (a) to provide for the medical . . . <sup>F3</sup> inspection at appropriate intervals of pupils in attendance at schools maintained by local education authorities <sup>F4</sup> . . . and for the medical . . . <sup>F3</sup> treatment of such pupils . . . <sup>F5</sup>;
  - (b) to arrange, to such extent as he considers necessary to meet all reasonable requirements in England and Wales, for the giving of advice on contraception, the medical examination of persons seeking advice on contraception, the treatment of such persons and the supply of contraceptive substances and appliances.

[<sup>F6</sup>(1A) It is also the Secretary of State's duty to provide, to such extent as he considers necessary to meet all reasonable requirements—

- (a) for the dental inspection of pupils in attendance at schools maintained by local education authorities <sup>F4</sup> . . . ;
- (b) for the dental treatment of such pupils; and
- (c) for the education of such pupils in dental health.

(1B) Schedule 1 to this Act shall have effect.]

- (2) The Secretary of State may—
  - (a) provide invalid carriages for persons appearing to him to be suffering from severe physical defect or disability and, at the request of such a person, may provide for him a vehicle other than an invalid carriage (and the additional

*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

provisions set out in Schedule 2 to this Act have effect in relation to this paragraph);

- (b) <sup>F7</sup> .....
- (c) provide a microbiological service, which may include the provision of laboratories, for the control of the spread of infectious diseases [<sup>F8</sup>and carry on such other activities as in his opinion can conveniently be carried on in conjunction with that service];
- (d) conduct, or assist by grants or otherwise (without prejudice to the general powers and duties conferred on him under the <sup>M5</sup>Ministry of Health Act 1919) any person to conduct, research into any matters relating to the causation, prevention, diagnosis or treatment of illness, and into any such other matters connected with any service provided under this Act as he considers appropriate.

[<sup>F9</sup>(2A) Charges may be made for service or materials supplied by virtue of paragraph (c) of subsection (2) above; and the powers conferred by that paragraph may be exercised both for the purposes of the health service and for other purposes.]

[<sup>F10</sup>(2B) The Secretary of State's functions may be performed outside England and Wales, in so far as they relate—

- (a) to holidays for patients;
- (b) to the transfer of patients to or from Scotland, Northern Ireland, the Isle of Man or the Channel Islands; or
- (c) to the return of patients who have received treatment in England and Wales to countries or territories outside the British Islands.]

(3) ..... <sup>F11</sup>

(4) The Public Health Laboratory Service Board continues in being for the purpose of exercising such functions with respect to the [<sup>F12</sup>powers conferred by paragraph (c) of subsection (2) above as the Secretary of State may determine].

(5) The Board shall continue to be constituted in accordance with Part I of Schedule 3 to this Act, and the additional provisions set out in Part II of that Schedule have effect in relation to the Board.

#### Textual Amendments

- F3** Words repealed by Health and Medicines Act 1988 (c. 49, SIF 113:2), ss. 10(1)(a), 25(2), **Sch. 3**
- F4** Words in s. 5(1)(a)(1A)(a) repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(3), **Sch. 31**; S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** (with arts. 3-23)
- F5** Words repealed by Health and Medicines Act 1988 (c. 49, SIF 113:2), s. 25(2), **Sch. 3**
- F6** S. 5(1A)(1B) inserted by Health and Medicines Act 1988 (c. 49, SIF 113:2), s. **10(1)(b)**
- F7** S. 5(2)(b) repealed (E.W.) (29.11.2002) by The National Health Service Act 1977 and National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990 (Amendment) Regulations 2002 (S.I. 2002/2759), **reg. 3(2)**
- F8** Words substituted by Public Health Laboratory Service Act 1979 (c. 23, SIF 113:1), s. **1(1)**
- F9** S. 5(2A) inserted by Public Health Laboratory Service Act 1979 (c. 23, SIF 113:1), s. **1(2)**
- F10** S. 5(2B) added by Health and Social Security Act 1984 (c. 48, SIF 113:1), s. **9(1)**
- F11** S. 5(3) repealed by Social Security Act 1988 (c. 7, SIF 113:1), s. 16(2), **Sch. 5**
- F12** Words substituted by Public Health Laboratory Service Act 1979 (c. 23, SIF 113:1), s. **1(3)**

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C6** S. 5(1)-(1B) applied (1.4.1994) by S.I. 1994/653, reg. 42(1), **Sch. Pt. I**



**Status:** Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- S. 5(1)-(1B) applied (9.5.1994) by S.I. 1994/1084, reg. 8(1), **Sch. 2 Pt. 1**
- C7** S. 5(1)(a)(b)(1A): transfer of functions (E.) (1.4.2001) by S.I. 2001/747, regs. 2(1), 3, 4, **Sch. 1**
- C8** S. 5(2)(d): functions of local authority not to be responsibility of an executive of the authority (1.4.2000) by virtue of S.I. 2000/695, reg. 3(2)(a), **Sch. 1** (as amended (E.) (1.4.2002) by S.I. 2002/555, **reg. 3(3)**)
- C9** S. 5(2)(b)(d): transfer of functions (E.) (1.4.2001) by S.I. 2001/747, regs. 2(1), 3, 4, **Sch. 1**
- C10** S. 5(2B) modified (23.5.1991) by S.I. 1991/1236, **art. 2(b)** (which S.I. revoked S.I. 1991/577)

**Marginal Citations**

- M3** 1919 c. 21(57).

*Central Health Services Council and Medical Practices Committee*

**6** <sup>X1</sup>**Central Health Services Council, and standing advisory committees.**

- (1) . . . . . <sup>F13</sup>
- (3) The Secretary of State may, . . . <sup>F14</sup> by order constitute standing advisory committees for the purpose of advising him . . . <sup>F14</sup> on such of the services provided under this Act as may be specified in the order [<sup>F15</sup>and the provisions of Schedule 4 to this Act shall have effect in relation to such committees].
- [<sup>F16</sup>(4) Any committee so constituted shall consist of persons appointed by the Secretary of State after consultation with such representative organisations as he recognises for the purpose.]
- (5) It shall be the duty of a committee so constituted to advise the Secretary of State and . . . <sup>F14</sup>
  - (a) upon such matters relating to the services with which the committee are concerned as they think fit, and
  - (b) upon any questions referred to them by the Secretary of State . . . <sup>F14</sup> relating to those services,
- . . . . . <sup>F14</sup>
- (6) . . . . . <sup>F13</sup>

**Editorial Information**

- X1** Unreliable marginal note

**Textual Amendments**

- F13** Ss. 6(1)(2)(6)(7), 30(2), 59, 60, 67-71, 73-76, Sch. 4 para. 1, Sch. 15 paras. 11, 41, 68-70 repealed by [Health Services Act 1980 \(c. 53, SIF 113:2\)](#), **Sch. 7**
- F14** Words repealed by [Health Services Act 1980 \(c. 53, SIF 113:2\)](#), **Sch. 7**
- F15** Words added by [Health Services Act 1980 \(c. 53, SIF 113:2\)](#), **s. 8(3)(a)**
- F16** S. 6(4) substituted by [Health Services Act 1980 \(c. 53, SIF 113:2\)](#), **s. 8(3)(b)**

**7** **Medical Practices Committee.**

- <sup>F17</sup> . . . . .

*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Textual Amendments

- F17** S. 7 repealed (1.4.2002 for E. (and purportedly for W.) and 1.7.2002 for W.) by 2001 c. 15, s. 67(1) (2), Sch. 5 Pt. 1 para. 5(2), Sch. 6 Pt. 1 (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)); S.I. 2002/1095, art. 2(3), Sch.; S.I. 2002/1475, art. 2(1), Sch. Pt. 1

### Local administration

#### [<sup>F18</sup>8] Health Authorities and Strategic Health Authorities

- (1) It is the duty of the Secretary of State to establish, in accordance with Part 1 of Schedule 5 to this Act, authorities to be called—
  - (a) Strategic Health Authorities, in the case of authorities established for areas in England;
  - (b) Health Authorities, in the case of authorities established for areas in Wales.
- (2) Subject to subsection (4) below—
  - (a) a Strategic Health Authority shall be established for such area of England as is specified in the order establishing the authority; and
  - (b) a Health Authority shall be established for such area of Wales as is so specified, or, if the order so provides, for the whole of Wales.
- (3) A Strategic Health Authority or a Health Authority shall be known by such name, in addition to the title “Strategic Health Authority” or “Health Authority”, as—
  - (a) appears to the Secretary of State appropriately to signify the connection of the authority with the area for which they are established; and
  - (b) is specified in the order establishing the authority.
- (4) The Secretary of State may by order—
  - (a) vary the area of a Strategic Health Authority or Health Authority;
  - (b) abolish a Strategic Health Authority or Health Authority;
  - (c) establish a new Strategic Health Authority or Health Authority;
  - (d) change the name by which a Strategic Health Authority or Health Authority are known.
- (5) No order shall be made under this section relating to a Strategic Health Authority until after the completion of such consultation as may be prescribed.
- (6) Consultation requirements contained in regulations under subsection (5) are in addition to, and not in substitution for, any other consultation requirements which may apply.
- (7) The Secretary of State shall act under this section so as to ensure—
  - (a) that the areas for which Strategic Health Authorities are at any time established together comprise the whole of England;
  - (b) that the areas for which Health Authorities are at any time established together comprise the whole of Wales; and
  - (c) that no area for which a Strategic Health Authority or a Health Authority are established extends both into England and into Wales.

*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (8) The power to make incidental or supplemental provision conferred by section 126(4) below includes, in particular, in its application to orders made under this section, power to make provision for the transfer of staff, property, rights and liabilities.]

**Textual Amendments**

- F18** S. 8 substituted (1.10.2002) for ss. 8, 10 by [National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 \(c. 17\)](#), **ss. 1(2)**, 130; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(a)**

9 ..... **F19**

**Textual Amendments**

- F19** S. 9, Sch. 5 Pt. I para. 4, Sch. 8 paras. 1(2), 2(5), 3(2), repealed by [Health and Social Services and Social Security Adjudications Act 1983 \(c. 41, SIF 113:3\)](#), ss. 13, 30, **Sch. 10 Pt. I**

**11** [<sup>F23</sup>**Special Health Authorities.**]

- [<sup>F24</sup>(1) The Secretary of State may by order establish special bodies for the purpose of exercising any functions which may be conferred on them by or under this Act.]
- (2) The Secretary of State may, subject to the provisions of Part III of Schedule 5 to this Act, make such further provision relating to that body as he thinks fit.
- (3) A body established in pursuance of this section shall (without prejudice to the power conferred by subsection (4) below allocate a particular name to the body) be called a [<sup>F25</sup>Special Health Authorities].
- (4) Without prejudice to the generality of the power conferred by this section to make an order (or of section 126(4) below), that order may in particular contain provisions as to—
- (a) the membership of the body established by the order;
  - (b) the transfer to the body of officers, property, rights and liabilities; and
  - (c) the name by which the body is to be known.
- (5) It is the Secretary of State’s duty before he makes such an order to consult with respect to the order such bodies as he may recognise as representing officers who in his opinion are likely to be transferred or affected by transfers in pursuance of the order.

**Textual Amendments**

- F23** S. 11 sidenote substituted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by [1995 c. 17](#), ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), **Sch. 1 Pt. I para. 2(c)** (with [Sch. 2 para. 6](#))
- F24** S. 11(1) substituted (1.9.1999 for E. and 1.12.1999 for W.) by [1999 c. 8](#), s. 65(1), **Sch. 4 para. 6**; S.I. 1999/2342, **art. 2(1)**, **Sch. 1**; S.I. 1999/3184, **art. 2(2)**, **Sch. 2** (with **art. 3**)
- F25** Words in s. 11(3) substituted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by [1995 c. 17](#), ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), **Sch. 1 Pt. I para. 2(b)** (with [Sch. 2 para. 6](#))

*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## 12 Supplementary provisions for ss. 8 <sup>F26</sup>and] 11.

<sup>F27</sup>(1) . . . . .

<sup>F28</sup>(2) The provisions of Part III of Schedule 5 to this Act have effect, so far as applicable, in relation to—

- <sup>F29</sup>(a) [<sup>F30</sup>Strategic Health Authorities and] Health Authorities established under section 8 above; and
- (b) any Special Health Authority established under section 11 above.]

### Textual Amendments

- F26** Word in s. 12 sidenote substituted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), **Sch. 1 Pt. I para. 3(c)** (with **Sch. 2 para. 6**)
- F27** S. 12(1) omitted (4.1.2000 for E. and otherwise prosp.) and repealed (prosp.) by 1999 c. 8, s. 65, **Sch. 4 para. 7**, **Sch. 5**; S.I. 1999/2342, art. 2(3), **Sch. 2**
- F28** S. 12 renumbered as s. 12(2) (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), **Sch. 1 Pt. I para. 3** (with **Sch. 2 para. 6**)
- F29** S. 12(2)(a)(b) (as so renumbered) substituted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) for s. 12(2)(a)-(c) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), **Sch. 1 Pt. I para. 3(b)** (with **Sch. 2 para. 6**)
- F30** Words in s. 12(2)(a) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), s. 1(3), **Sch. 1 Pt. 1 para. 2**; S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)

## <sup>F31</sup>13 Secretary of State's directions.

- (1) The Secretary of State may direct a [<sup>F32</sup>Health Authority or Special Health Authority]] to exercise on his behalf such of his functions relating to the health service as are specified in the directions, and <sup>F33</sup> . . . it shall be the duty of the [<sup>F34</sup>Health Authority or Special Health Authority] to comply with the directions.
- (2) The Secretary of State's functions under subsection (1) above—
  - (a) include any of his functions under enactments relating to mental health and nursing homes, <sup>F35</sup> . . .
  - (b) . . . . .

### Textual Amendments

- F31** S. 13 ceased to have effect (1.9.1999 for E. and 1.12.1999 for W.) by 1999 c. 8, ss. 12(5), 65, **Sch. 5**; S.I. 1999/2342, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**; S.I. 1999/3184, art. 2(2), **Sch. 2** (with art. 3); S.I. 2000/1041, art. 2(d), **Sch.**
- F32** Words in s. 13(1) substituted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), **Sch. 1 Pt. I para. 4(a)(i)** (with **Sch. 2 para. 6**)
- F33** Words in s. 13(1) omitted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) and repealed (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 5(1)(2), 8(1), **Sch. 1 Pt. I para. 4(a)(ii)**, **Sch. 3** (with **Sch. 2 paras. 6, 16**)
- F34** Words in s. 13(1) substituted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), **Sch. 1 Pt. I para. 4(a)(iii)** (with **Sch. 2 para. 6**)
- F35** S. 13(2)(b) and preceding word omitted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) and repealed (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 5(1)(2), 8(1), **Sch. 1 Pt. I para. 4(b)**, **Sch. 3** (with **Sch. 2 paras. 6, 16**)

*Status:* Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

F36 14 .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F36** S. 14 omitted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) and repealed (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 5, 8(1), Sch. 1 Pt. I para. 5, **Sch. 3** (with Sch. 2 paras. 6, 16)

**15** [F37 **Duty of Health Authority in relation to family health services.**]

(1) It is the duty [F38 of each Primary Care Trust and] of [F39 each Health Authority, in accordance with regulations]—

- [F40(a) to administer the arrangements made in pursuance of this Act for the provision of general medical services, general dental services, general ophthalmic services and pharmaceutical services for their [F41 area];]
- (b) to perform such [F42 management and] other functions relating to those services as may be prescribed.

F43

[F44(1ZA) It is the duty of [F45 each Strategic Health Authority and] each Health Authority, in accordance with regulations, to perform such functions in relation to section 28C arrangements as may be prescribed.

(1ZB) Regulations under subsection (1ZA) may, in particular—

- (a) prescribe functions in relation to training;
- (b) provide for appeals to the Secretary of State or a prescribed body in relation to functions prescribed by the regulations.]

F46(1A) .....

[F47 In relation to a Part II medical practitioner—

- F48(1B) (a) whose name is included in the medical list of only one [F49 Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority, and
- (b) who practises on his own or in partnership with others all of whom are Part II medical practitioners whose names are included only in [F50 the medical list of that Trust or Authority] medical list,

any reference in this Act or the M4 National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990 to the relevant [F49 Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority is to be construed as a reference to [F51 that Trust or Authority] .

(1BA) In relation to a medical practitioner who is not within subsection (1B), any reference in this Act or the National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990 to the relevant [F52 Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority is to be construed as a reference to [F53 the Trust or Authority] in whose area most of the practice patients live.]

[ In relation to the operation of a fund-holding practice by medical practitioners the F54(1C) relevant Health Authority in respect of one or more of whom would (apart from this subsection) be different from that in respect of the other or others, the relevant Health Authority for each of them shall be determined for the purposes of the application of any provision relating to fund-holding practices as if they were all practising in a single partnership.]

[ In this section—

*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- <sup>F55</sup>(1D)           ”Part II medical practitioner” means a medical practitioner who provides general medical services under Part II and does not perform personal medical services under section 28C arrangements; and
- ”practice patient” means—
- (a) in relation to a medical practitioner who practises otherwise than in partnership, an individual who is on that practitioner’s list of patients (or, if that practitioner and one or more other medical practitioners together have a single list of patients in connection with section 28C arrangements, an individual who is on that single list);
- (b) in relation to a medical practitioner who is one of two or more practitioners who practise in partnership with each other, an individual who is on the list of patients of any of those practitioners (or, if any of those practitioners together have a single list of patients in connection with section 28C arrangements, an individual who is on that single list).]]

(2) ..... <sup>F56</sup>

#### Textual Amendments

- F37** S. 15 sidenote substituted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), **Sch. 1 Pt. I para. 6(e)** (with Sch. 2 para. 6)
- F38** Words in s. 15(1) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), s. 2(5), **Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 2(2)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(d)**
- F39** Words in s. 15(1) substituted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), **Sch. 1 Pt. I para. 6(a)(i)** (with Sch. 2 para. 6)
- F40** S. 15(1)(a) substituted by Health and Social Security Act 1984 (c. 48, SIF 113:1), s. 5(2)
- F41** Words in s. 15(1)(a) substituted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), **Sch. 1 Pt. I para. 6(a)(ii)** (with Sch. 2 para. 6)
- F42** Words inserted by National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990 (c. 19, SIF 113:2), s. 12(1)(b)
- F43** Words repealed by Health and Social Security Act 1984 (c. 48, SIF 113:1), s. 24, **Sch. 8 Pt. I**
- F44** S. 15(1ZA)(1ZB) inserted (1.4.1998) by 1997 c. 46, s. 41(10)(11), **Sch. 2 Pt. I para. 4(2)**; S.I. 1998/631, art. 2(1)(b), **Sch. 2**
- F45** Words in s. 15(1ZA) inserted (1.10.2002 for E.W.) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), s. 4(3), **Sch. 3 Pt. 2 para. 11**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(a)**
- F46** S. 15(1A) omitted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) and repealed (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 5(1)(2), 8(1), Sch. 1 Pt. I para. 6(b), **Sch. 3** (with Sch. 2 paras. 6, 16)
- F47** S. 15(1B)-(1D) repealed (1.10.1999 for specified purposes for E., 1.4.2000 for specified purposes for W. and otherwise prosp.) by 1999 c. 8, s. 65, Sch. 4 para. 8, **Sch. 5**; S.I. 1999/2540, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**; S.I. 2000/1026, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**; S.I. 2000/1041, art. 2(d), **Sch.**
- F48** S. 15(1B)(1BA) substituted (1.4.1998) for s. 15(1B) by 1997 c. 46, s. 41(10)(11), **Sch. 2 Pt. I para. 4(3)**; S.I. 1998/631, art. 2(1)(b), **Sch. 2**
- F49** Words in s. 15(1B) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), s. 2(5), **Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 2(3)(a)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(d)**
- F50** Words in s. 15(1B) substituted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), s. 2(5), **Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 2(3)(b)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(d)**
- F51** Words in s. 15(1B) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), s. 2(5), **Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 2(3)(c)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(d)**
- F52** Words in s. 15(1BA) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), s. 2(5), **Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 2(4)(a)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(d)**
- F53** Words in s. 15(1BA) substituted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), s. 2(5), **Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 2(4)(b)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(d)**



**Status:** Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- F54** S. 15(1C) inserted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), **Sch. 1 Pt. I para. 6(d)** (with Sch. 2 para. 6)
- F55** S. 15(1D) inserted (1.4.1998) by 1997 c. 46, s. 41(10)(11), **Sch. 2 Pt. I para. 4(4)**; S.I. 1998/631, art. 2(1)(b), **Sch. 2**
- F56** S. 15(2), Sch. 12 para. 2(5) repealed by Health and Social Security Act 1984 (c. 48, SIF 113:1), s. 24, **Sch. 8 Pt. I**

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C11** S. 15(1)(b) modified (1.4.1995) by S.I. 1995/692, **art. 2**

**Marginal Citations**

- M4** 1990 c. 19.

**[<sup>F57</sup>16 Exercise of functions by Health Authorities and Special Health Authorities.**

- (1) This subsection applies to functions which are exercisable by [<sup>F58</sup>a Strategic Health Authority or] a Health Authority under or by virtue of this Act (including this section), the <sup>M5</sup>National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990 or any prescribed provision of any other Act.
- (2) Regulations may provide for any functions to which subsection (1) above applies to be exercised—
- <sup>F59</sup>(za) [ by another Strategic Health Authority;]
- (a) by another Health Authority,
- (b) by a Special Health Authority, or
- (c) jointly with any one or more of the following: Primary Care Trusts [<sup>F60</sup>, Local Health Boards][<sup>F61</sup>, other Strategic Health Authorities] and other Health Authorities.
- (3) Regulations may provide for any functions which are exercisable by a Special Health Authority under section 16D below to be exercised—
- (a) by another Special Health Authority, or
- (b) jointly with one or more other Special Health Authorities.
- (4) Regulations may provide—
- (a) for any functions to which subsection (1) above applies to be exercised, on behalf of the [<sup>F62</sup>Strategic Health Authority or] Health Authority by whom they are exercisable, by a committee, sub-committee or officer of the [<sup>F62</sup>Strategic Health Authority or] Health Authority,
- (b) for any functions which, under section 16D below or this section, are exercisable by a Special Health Authority to be exercised, on behalf of that authority, by a committee, sub-committee or officer of the authority,
- (c) for any functions exercisable jointly under subsection (2)(c) or (3)(b) above to be exercised, on behalf of the health service bodies in question, by a joint committee or joint sub-committee.]

*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Textual Amendments

- F57** S. 16 substituted (1.9.1999 for specified purposes for E., 1.12.1999 for specified purposes for W., 4.1.2000 insofar as not already in force for E. and otherwise prosp.) by 1999 c. 8, s. 65, **Sch. 4 para. 9**; S.I. 1999/2342, art. 2(1)(3), Schs. 1, 2; S.I. 1999/3184, art. 2(2), **Sch. 2** (with art. 3)
- F58** Words in s. 16(1) inserted (2.9.2002 for E. and 1.10.2002 for W.) by **National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002** (c. 17), ss. 1(3), 42(3), **Sch. 1 Pt. 1 para. 3(a)**; S.I. 2002/2202, art. 3(a); S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(c)
- F59** S. 16(2)(za) inserted (2.9.2002 for E. and 1.10.2002 for W.) by **National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002** (c. 17), ss. 1(3), 42(3), **Sch. 1 Pt. 1 para. 3(b)(i)**; S.I. 2002/2202, art. 3(a); S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(c)
- F60** Words in 16(2)(c) inserted (10.10.2002 for W., otherwise prosp.) by **National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002** (c. 17), ss. 6(2), 42(3), **Sch. 5 para. 5**; S.I. 2002/2532, art. 2, **Sch.**
- F61** Words in 16(2)(c) inserted (2.9.2002 for E. and 1.10.2002 for W.) by **National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002** (c. 17), ss. 1(3), 42(3), **Sch. 1 Pt. 1 para. 3(b)(ii)**; S.I. 2002/2202, art. 3(a); S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(c)
- F62** Words in s. 16(4)(a) inserted (2.9.2002 for E. and 1.10.2002 for W.) by **National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002** (c. 17), ss. 1(3), 42(3), **Sch. 1 Pt. 1 para. 3(c)**; S.I. 2002/2202, art. 3(a); S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(c)

### Marginal Citations

- M5** 1990 c.19.

## [<sup>F63</sup>16A Primary Care Trusts.

- [<sup>F64</sup>(1) It is the duty of the Secretary of State to establish bodies to be known as Primary Care Trusts for areas in England with a view to their exercising functions in relation to the health service.
- (1A) The Secretary of State shall act under this section so as to ensure that the areas for which Primary Care Trusts are at any time established together comprise the whole of England.]
- (2) Each Primary Care Trust shall be established by an order made by him (referred to in this Act as a PCT order).
- (3) A Primary Care Trust shall be established for the area [<sup>F65</sup>of England] specified in its PCT order and shall exercise its functions in accordance with any prohibitions or restrictions in the order.
- (4) If any consultation requirements apply, they must be complied with before a PCT order is made.
- (5) In this section, "consultation requirements" means requirements about consultation contained in regulations (and the regulations must impose requirements where a PCT order establishes a Primary Care Trust).
- (6) Schedule 5A to this Act (which makes further provision about Primary Care Trusts) shall have effect.]



**Status:** Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

#### Textual Amendments

- F63** Ss. 16A, 16B inserted (8.9.1999 for specified purposes for E. and 4.1.2000 insofar as not already in force for E.) by 1999 c. 8, s. 2(1); S.I. 1999/2342, art. 2(2)(a)(3), Sch. 2
- F64** S. 16A(1)(1A) substituted (1.10.2002) for s. 16A(1) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. {2(2)}, 42(3); S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(a)
- F65** Words in s. 16A(3) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. {2(3)}, 42(3); S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(a)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C12** S. 16A extended (19.12.2001 for E.) by 2001 c. 15, ss. 45(5), 70(2) (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)); S.I. 2001/4149, art. 2(a)

### <sup>F66</sup>16B Exercise of functions by Primary Care Trusts.

- (1) This section applies to functions which are exercisable by a Primary Care Trust under or by virtue of this Act (including this section), the <sup>M6</sup>National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990 or any prescribed provision of any other Act.
- (2) Regulations may provide for any functions to which this section applies to be exercised—
  - (a) by another Primary Care Trust,
  - (b) by a Special Health Authority, or
  - (c) jointly with any one or more of the following: [<sup>F67</sup>Strategic Health Authorities,] Health Authorities, NHS trusts [<sup>F68</sup>, Local Health Boards] and other Primary Care Trusts.
- (3) Regulations may provide—
  - (a) for any functions to which this section applies to be exercised, on behalf of the Primary Care Trust by whom they are exercisable, by a committee, sub-committee or officer of the trust,
  - (b) for any functions which, under this section, are exercisable by a Special Health Authority to be exercised, on behalf of that authority, by a committee, sub-committee or officer of the authority,
  - (c) for any functions which, under this section, are exercisable by a Primary Care Trust jointly with one or more [<sup>F69</sup>Strategic Health Authorities,] Health Authorities or other Primary Care Trusts (but not with any NHS trusts) to be exercised, on behalf of the health service bodies in question, by a joint committee or joint sub-committee.

#### Textual Amendments

- F66** Ss. 16A, 16B inserted (8.9.1999 for specified purposes for E., 4.1.2000 insofar as not already in force for E. and otherwise *prosp.*) by 1999 c. 8, s. 2(1); S.I. 1999/2342, art. 2(2)(a)(3), Sch. 2
- F67** Words in s. 16B(2)(c) inserted (2.9.2002 for E. and 1.10.2002 for W.) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 1(3), 42(3), Sch. 1 Pt. 1 para. 4(a); S.I. 2002/2202, art. 3(a); S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(c)
- F68** Words in s. 16B(2)(c) inserted (10.10.2002 for W. and otherwise *prosp.*) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 6(2), 42(3), Sch. 5 para. 6; S.I. 2002/2532, art. 2

*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**F69** Words in s. 16B(3)(c) inserted (2.9.2002 for E. and 1.10.2002 for W.) by [National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 \(c. 17\), ss. 1\(3\), 42\(3\), Sch. 1 Pt. 1 para. 4\(b\); S.I. 2002/2202, art. 3\(a\); S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3\(1\)\(c\)](#)

#### Marginal Citations

**M6** [1990 c.19](#)

### [<sup>F70</sup>16BALocal Health Boards

- (1) The National Assembly for Wales may establish bodies to be known as Local Health Boards with a view, in particular, to their exercising—
  - (a) functions of Health Authorities transferred or to be transferred to the Assembly by order under section 27 of the Government of Wales Act 1998 (reform of Welsh health authorities),
  - (b) other functions of the Assembly relating to the health service.
- (2) Each Local Health Board shall be established by order made by the Assembly (referred to in this Act as an LHB order), and an order may establish more than one Local Health Board.
- (3) A Local Health Board shall be established for the area of Wales specified in its LHB order.
- (4) If any consultation requirements apply, they must be complied with before an LHB order is varied or revoked.
- (5) In this section, “consultation requirements” means requirements about consultation contained in regulations made by the Assembly.
- (6) Schedule 5B to this Act (which makes further provision about Local Health Boards) shall have effect.

#### Textual Amendments

**F70** [Ss. 16BA, 16BB, 16BC](#) inserted (10.10.2002 for W.) by [National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 \(c. 17\), ss. 6\(1\), 42\(3\); S.I. 2002/2532, art. 2](#)

### 16BB Local Health Boards: functions

- (1) The National Assembly for Wales may direct a Local Health Board to exercise in relation to its area any functions which—
  - (a) were exercised by a Health Authority in relation to any part of the same area, and
  - (b) have been transferred to the Assembly as mentioned in section 16BA(1) above.
- (2) The Assembly may also direct a Local Health Board to exercise in relation to its area such other functions of the Assembly relating to the health service as are specified in the directions.
- (3) The functions which may be specified in directions under this section include functions under enactments relating to mental health and nursing homes.

*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (4) The Assembly may give directions to a Local Health Board about its exercise of any functions.
- (5) Directions under subsection (1) above must be given in regulations made by the Assembly; but other directions under this section and directions under section 16BC below may be given in such regulations or by instrument in writing.

#### Textual Amendments

**F70** Ss. 16BA, 16BB, 16BC inserted (10.10.2002 for W.) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 6(1), 42(3); S.I. 2002/2532, art. 2

### 16BC Exercise of functions by Local Health Boards

- (1) This section applies to functions which are exercisable by a Local Health Board under or by virtue of section 16BB above or this section.
- (2) The Assembly may give directions providing for any functions to which this section applies to be exercised—
  - (a) by another Local Health Board;
  - (b) by a Special Health Authority; or
  - (c) jointly with any one or more of the following: Health Authorities, NHS trusts, Primary Care Trusts and other Local Health Boards.
- (3) Directions given by the Assembly may provide—
  - (a) for any functions to which this section applies to be exercised, on behalf of the Local Health Board by whom they are exercisable, by a committee, sub-committee or officer of the Board,
  - (b) for any functions which, under this section, are exercisable by a Special Health Authority to be exercised, on behalf of that authority, by a committee, sub-committee or officer of the authority,
  - (c) for any functions which, under this section, are exercisable by a Local Health Board jointly with one or more Health Authorities or other Local Health Boards (but not with any NHS trusts) to be exercised, on behalf of the health service bodies in question, by a joint committee or joint sub-committee.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F70** Ss. 16BA, 16BB, 16BC inserted (10.10.2002 for W.) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 6(1), 42(3); S.I. 2002/2532, art. 2

### [<sup>F71</sup>16C Advice for Health Authorities and Primary Care Trusts.

- (1) Every [<sup>F72</sup>Strategic Health Authority and every] Health Authority shall make arrangements with a view to securing that they receive advice appropriate for enabling them effectively to exercise the functions exercisable by them from persons with professional expertise relating to the physical or mental health of individuals.
- (2) This section applies to Primary Care Trusts [<sup>F73</sup>and Local Health Boards] as it applies to [<sup>F74</sup>Strategic Health Authorities and] Health Authorities.]

*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Textual Amendments

- F71** S. 16C inserted (4.1.2000 for E. and otherwise *prosp.*) by 1999 c. 8, s. 65, **Sch. 4 para. 10**; S.I. 1999/2342, art. 2(3)(a), **Sch. 2**
- F72** Words in s. 16C(1) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss.1(3), 42(3), **Sch. 1 Pt. 1 para. 5(a)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(c)**
- F73** Words in s. 16C(2) inserted (10.10.2002 for W., otherwise *prosp.*) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss.6(2), 42(3), **Sch. 5 para. 7**; S.I. 2002/2532, **art. 2**
- F74** Words in s. 16C(2) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss.1(3), 42(3), **Sch. 1 Pt. 1 para. 5(b)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(c)**

*[<sup>F75</sup> Directions as to distribution and exercise of functions]*

#### Textual Amendments

- F75** Ss. 16D, 17, 17A, 17B and preceding cross-heading substituted (1.9.1999 for specified purposes for E., 1.12.1999 for specified purposes for W., 4.1.2000 insofar as not already in force for E. and otherwise *prosp.*) for s. 17 by 1999 c. 8, s. 12(1); S.I. 1999/3184, art. 2(2), **Sch. 2** (with art. 3); S.I. 1999/2342, art. 2(1)(3), Sch. 1, **Sch. 2**

#### **[<sup>F76</sup>16D Secretary of State's directions: distribution of functions.**

- (1) The Secretary of State may direct a [<sup>F77</sup>Strategic Health Authority,] Health Authority or Special Health Authority [<sup>F78</sup>or a Primary Care Trust] to exercise any of his functions relating to the health service which are specified in the directions.
- (2) The Secretary of State may direct a Special Health Authority to exercise any functions of a [<sup>F79</sup>Strategic Health Authority or] Health Authority or a Primary Care Trust which are specified in the directions.
- (3) The functions which may be specified in directions under this section include functions under enactments relating to mental health and nursing homes.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F76** Ss. 16D, 17, 17A, 17B and preceding cross-heading substituted (1.9.1999 for specified purposes for E., 1.12.1999 for specified purposes for W., 4.1.2000 insofar as not already in force for E. and otherwise *prosp.*) for s. 17 by 1999 c. 8, s. 12(1); S.I. 1999/3184, art. 2(2), **Sch. 2** (with art. 3); S.I. 1999/2342, art. 2(1)(3), Sch. 1, **Sch. 2**
- F77** Words in s. 16D(1) inserted (2.9.2002 for E. and 1.10.2002 for W.) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss.1(3), 42(3), **Sch. 1 Pt. 1 para. 6(a)**; S.I. 2002/2202, **art. 3(a)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(c)**
- F78** Words in s. 16D(1) inserted (2.9.2002 for E., otherwise *prosp.*) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 3(2), 42(3); S.I. 2002/2202, **art. 3(c)**
- F79** Words in s. 16D(2) inserted (2.9.2002 for E and 1.10.2002 for W.) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss.1(3), 42(3), **Sch. 1 Pt. 1 para. 6(b)**; S.I. 2002/2202, **art. 3(a)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(c)**

**Status:** Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

[17 <sup>F80</sup> **Secretary of State’s directions: exercise of functions.**

(1) The Secretary of State may give directions to any of the bodies mentioned in subsection (2) below about their exercise of any functions.

(2) The bodies are—

[ Strategic Health Authorities;]  
<sup>F81</sup>(za)

- (a) Health Authorities;
- (b) Special Health Authorities;
- (c) Primary Care Trusts;
- (d) NHS trusts.

[ Nothing in any provision made by or under this or any other Act shall be read as <sup>F82</sup>(3) affecting the generality of subsection (1) above. ]]

**Textual Amendments**

**F80** Ss. 16D, 17, 17A, 17B and preceding cross-heading substituted (1.9.1999 for specified purposes for E., 1.12.1999 for specified purposes for W., 4.1.2000 insofar as not already in force for E. and otherwise *prosp.*) for s. 17 by 1999 c. 8, s. 12(1); S.I. 1999/3184, art. 2(2), Sch. 2 (with art. 3); S.I. 1999/2342, art. 2(1)(3), Sch. 1, Sch. 2

**F81** S. 17(2)(za) inserted (2.9.2002 for E. and 1.10.2002 for W.) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 1(3), 42(3), Sch. 1 Pt. 1 para. 7; S.I. 2002/2202, art. 3(a); S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(c)

**F82** S. 17(3) substituted for s. 17(3)(a)-(c) (22.10.2001 (E.) and otherwise *prosp.*) by 2001 c. 15, ss. 67(1), 70(2), Sch. 5 Pt. 1 para. 5(3) (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)); S.I. 2001/3619, art. 3(2)

[<sup>F83</sup>17A **Strategic Health Authority’s directions: distribution of functions.**

(1) A Strategic Health Authority may, in relation to any specified functions of theirs, direct a Primary Care Trust any part of whose area falls within their area to exercise those functions.

(2) But a Strategic Health Authority may not so direct a Primary Care Trust in relation to any functions of the Strategic Health Authority arising under section 28C arrangements if the Primary Care Trust is providing any services in accordance with those arrangements.

(3) The Secretary of State may direct Strategic Health Authorities that specified functions of theirs—

- (a) are to be exercisable, or exercisable to (or only to) any specified extent, by Primary Care Trusts; or
- (b) are not to be exercisable by Primary Care Trusts,

and that the power in subsection (1) above is to be exercised accordingly.

(4) Directions under subsection (3)(a) above may include directions that any of the specified functions are to be exercised (or exercised to or only to any specified extent) jointly with the Strategic Health Authority, or jointly by one or more Primary Care Trusts; but such directions may be given only if regulations providing for the joint exercise of those functions have been made under section 16 or 16B above.

(5) In this section, “specified” means specified in the directions.]

*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Textual Amendments

- F83** S. 17A substituted (2.9.2002 for specified purposes for E. and otherwise 1.10.2002) by [National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 \(c. 17\), s. 3\(3\)](#); S.I. 2002/2202, [art. 3\(a\)](#); S.I. 2002/2478, [art. 3\(1\)\(c\)](#)

#### [<sup>F84</sup>17B Health Authority's directions: exercise of functions.

- (1) A [<sup>F85</sup>Strategic Health Authority] may give directions to a Primary Care Trust about its exercise of any functions <sup>F86</sup> . . . .
- (2) Directions under this section have effect subject to any directions given under section 17 above.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F84** Ss. 16D, 17, 17A, 17B and preceding cross-heading substituted (1.9.1999 for specified purposes for E., 1.12.1999 for specified purposes for W., 4.1.2000 insofar as not already in force for E. and otherwise *prosp.*) for s. 17 by 1999 c. 8, [s. 12\(1\)](#); S.I. 1999/3184, [art. 2\(2\)](#), [Sch. 2](#) (with [art. 3](#)); S.I. 1999/2342, [art. 2\(1\)\(3\)](#), [Sch. 1](#), [Sch. 2](#)
- F85** Words in s. 17B(1) substituted (1.10.2002) by [National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 \(c. 17\)](#), [ss. 1\(3\)](#), [42\(3\)](#), [Sch. 1 Pt. 1 para. 8](#); S.I. 2002/2478, [art. 3\(1\)\(b\)](#)
- F86** Words in s. 17B(1) repealed (1.10.2002) by [National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 \(c. 17\)](#), [ss. 3\(4\)](#), [42\(3\)](#), [Sch. 9 Pt. 1](#); S.I. 2002/2478, [art. 3\(1\)\(b\)\(f\)](#)

#### [<sup>F87</sup> Directions and regulations: general]

#### Textual Amendments

- F87** S. 18: cross-heading, sidenote and subsections (1)-(1B) substituted (1.9.1999 for specified purposes for E., 1.12.1999 for specified purposes for W., 4.1.2000 insofar as not already in force for E. and otherwise *prosp.*) for s. 18 down to the end of subsection (1) by 1999 c. 8, [s. 12\(3\)](#); S.I. 1999/2343, [art. 2\(1\)\(3\)](#), [Schs. 1, 2](#); S.I. 1999/3184, [art. 2\(2\)](#), [Sch. 2](#) (with [art. 3](#))

#### [<sup>F88</sup>18 Directions and regulations under preceding provisions.

- (1) Any directions given by the Secretary of State under section 16D, 17 or 17A above shall be given by regulations or by an instrument in writing.
- (1A) But any directions given by him—
- (a) under section 16D above about functions under section 4 above; [<sup>F89</sup>or]
  - (b) <sup>F90</sup> . . . . .
  - (c) under section 16D, 17 or 17A above about functions conferred on the Secretary of State by section 20(1) or (2) below,
- shall be given by regulations.
- (1B) Directions given by a [<sup>F91</sup>Strategic Health Authority] under section 17A or 17B above shall be given by an instrument in writing.]
- <sup>F92</sup>(2) . . . . .



**Status:** Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (3) Directions given and regulations made under sections [<sup>F93</sup>16 to 17B above] in respect of any function—
- (a) shall not, except in prescribed cases, preclude [<sup>F94</sup>an authority or a] person by whom the function is exercisable apart from the directions or regulations from exercising the function, and
  - (b) may in the case of directions given by an instrument in writing be varied or revoked by subsequent directions given in pursuance of those sections and this section (without prejudice to the operation of [<sup>F95</sup>section 14 of the <sup>M7</sup>Interpretation Act 1978] in the case of directions given by regulations),

<sup>F96</sup> . . .

#### Textual Amendments

- F88** S. 18: cross-heading, sidenote and subsections (1)-(1B) substituted (1.9.1999 for specified purposes for E., 1.12.1999 for specified purposes for W., 4.1.2000 insofar as not already in force for E. and otherwise *prosp.*) for s. 18 down to the end of subsection (1) by 1999 c. 8, s. 12(3); S.I. 1999/2342, art. 2(1)(3), Schs. 1, 2; S.I. 1999/3184, art. 2(2), Sch. 2 (with art. 3)
- F89** Word in s. 18(1A)(a) inserted (2.9.2002 for E., otherwise *prosp.*) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), s. 3(5)(a); S.I. 2002/2202, art. 3(c)
- F90** S. 18(1A)(b) repealed (2.9.2002 for E. and otherwise 1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), s. 3(5)(b); S.I. 2002/2202, art. 3(c); S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(f)
- F91** Words in s. 18(1B) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), s. 1(3), Sch. 1 Pt. 1 para. 9; S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(c)
- F92** S. 18(2) omitted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) and repealed (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 5(1)(2), 8(1), Sch. 1 Pt. 1 para. 9(b), Sch. 3 (with Sch. 2 paras. 6, 16)
- F93** Words in s. 18(3) substituted (1.9.1999 for specified purposes for E., 1.12.1999 for specified purposes for W., 4.1.2000 insofar as not already in force for E. and otherwise *prosp.*) by 1999 c. 8, s. 12(4); S.I. 1999/2343, art. 2(1)(3), Schs. 1, 2; S.I. 1999/3184, art. 2(2), Sch. 2 (with art. 3)
- F94** Words in s. 18(3) substituted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), Sch. 1 Pt. 1 para. 9(c)(ii) (with Sch. 2 para. 6)
- F95** Words substituted by virtue of Interpretation Act 1978 (c. 30, SIF 115:1), s. 17(2)(a)
- F96** Words in s. 18(3) repealed (28.6.1995) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 3(8)(10), 5(1), Sch. 3 (with Sch. 2 para. 6s, 16)

#### Marginal Citations

- M7** 1978 c. 30(115:1).

[<sup>F97</sup> Primary Care Trusts: further functions

#### Textual Amendments

- F97** S. 18A and preceding cross-heading inserted (4.1.2000 for specified purposes for E. and otherwise *prosp.*) by 1999 c. 8, s. 5; S.I. 1999/2342, art. 2(3), Sch. 2

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

<sup>F98</sup>**18A Provision of services etc.**

- (1) A Primary Care Trust may provide services under an agreement made under section 28C below, and may do so as a member of a qualifying body (within the meaning of section 28D).
- (2) A Primary Care Trust may arrange for the provision by the trust to another health service body of goods or services (including accommodation) which are of the same description as those which, at the time of making the arrangement, the trust has power to provide in carrying out its other functions.
- (3) A Primary Care Trust may provide premises for the use of persons—
  - (a) providing general medical, general dental, general ophthalmic or pharmaceutical services, or
  - (b) performing personal medical or personal dental services under an agreement made under section 28C below,
 on any terms it thinks fit.
- (4) A Primary Care Trust which manages any hospital may make accommodation or services available there for patients who give undertakings (or for whom undertakings are given) to pay any charges imposed by the trust in respect of the accommodation or services.
- (5) A Primary Care Trust has power to do anything specified in section 7(2) of <sup>M8</sup>the Health and Medicines Act 1988 (provision of goods, services etc.), other than make accommodation or services available for patients at any hospital it manages, for the purpose of making additional income available for improving the health service.
- (6) A Primary Care Trust may only exercise a power conferred by subsection (4) or (5) above—
  - (a) to the extent that its exercise does not to any significant extent interfere with the performance by the trust of its functions or of its obligations under NHS contracts, and
  - (b) in circumstances specified in directions under section 17 above, with the Secretary of State's consent.
- (7) In this section "hospital" means a health service hospital and includes any establishment or facility managed for the purposes of the health service.]

**Textual Amendments**

**F98** [S. 18A](#) and preceding cross-heading inserted (4.1.2000 for specified purposes for E. and otherwise *prosp.*) by [1999 c. 8, s. 5](#); [S.I. 1999/2342, art. 2\(3\)](#), [Sch. 2](#)

**Marginal Citations**

**M8** [1988 c.49](#)



*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

*[<sup>F99</sup>Advisory committees for Wales] and Community Health Councils*

**Textual Amendments**

**F99** Words in the cross-heading substituted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), **Sch. 1 para. 10(e)** (with **Sch. 2 paras. 6, 16**)

**19** [<sup>F100</sup>**Advisory committees for Wales**].

(1) Where the Secretary of State is satisfied that a committee formed for Wales, <sup>F101</sup> . . . is representative of persons of any of the following categories—

- (a) the medical practitioners, or
- (b) the dental practitioners, or
- (c) the nurses and midwives, or
- (d) the registered pharmacists, or
- (e) the ophthalmic and dispensing opticians,

of Wales <sup>F102</sup> . . . , then it shall be his duty to recognise the committee.

(2) A committee recognised in pursuance of subsection (1) above shall be called—

- (a) the Welsh Medical, Dental, Nursing and Midwifery, Pharmaceutical or Optical Committee, as the case may be;

<sup>F103</sup>(b) . . . . .

<sup>F104</sup>(3) . . . . .

(4) The Secretary of State's duty under [<sup>F105</sup>subsection (1)] above is subject to paragraph 1 of Schedule 6 to this Act, and that Schedule has effect in relation to a committee recognised in pursuance of this section.

**Textual Amendments**

**F100** Words in the sidenote to s. 19 substituted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), **Sch. 10 para. 10(e)** (with **Sch. 2 paras. 6, 16**)

**F101** Words in s. 19(1) repealed (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 5(1)(2), 8(1), **Sch. 1 para. 10(a)(i)**, **Sch. 3** (with **Sch. 2 paras. 6, 16**)

**F102** Words in s. 19(1) repealed (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 5(1)(2), 8(1), **Sch. 1 para. 10(a)(ii)**, **Sch. 3** (with **Sch. 2 paras. 6, 16**)

**F103** S. 19(2)(b) repealed (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 5(1)(2), 8(1), **Sch. 1 para. 10(b)**, **Sch. 3** (with **Sch. 2 paras. 6, 16**)

**F104** S. 19(3) repealed (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 5(1)(2), 8(1), **Sch. 1 para. 10(c)**, **Sch. 3** (with **Sch. 2 paras. 6, 16**)

**F105** Words in s. 19(4) substituted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), **Sch. 1 para. 10(d)** (with **Sch. 2 paras. 6, 16**)

*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

PROSPECTIVE

### [<sup>F106</sup>19A Independent advocacy services

- (1) It is the duty of the Secretary of State to arrange, to such extent as he considers necessary to meet all reasonable requirements, for the provision of independent advocacy services.
- (2) “Independent advocacy services” are services providing assistance (by way of representation or otherwise) to individuals making or intending to make—
  - (a) a complaint under a procedure operated by a health service body or independent provider,
  - (b) a complaint to the Health Service Commissioner for England or the Health Service Commissioner for Wales,
  - (c) a complaint of a prescribed description which relates to the provision of services as part of the health service and—
    - (i) is made under a procedure of a prescribed description, or
    - (ii) gives rise, or may give rise, to proceedings of a prescribed description.
- (3) In subsection (2)—
 

“health service body” means a body which, under section 2(1) or (2) of the Health Service Commissioners Act 1993, is subject to investigation by the Health Service Commissioner for England or the Health Service Commissioner for Wales;

“independent provider” means a person who, under section 2B(1) or (2) of that Act, is subject to such investigation.
- (4) The Secretary of State may make such other arrangements as he thinks fit for the provision of assistance to individuals in connection with complaints relating to the provision of services as part of the health service.
- (5) In making arrangements under this section the Secretary of State must have regard to the principle that the provision of services under the arrangements should, so far as practicable, be independent of any person who is the subject of a relevant complaint or is involved in investigating or adjudicating on such a complaint.
- (6) The Secretary of State may make payments to any person in pursuance of arrangements under this section.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F106** S. 19A inserted (*prosp.*) by 2001 c. 15, ss. 12, 70(2) (with ss. 64(9), 65(4))

## 20 Community Health Councils.

- (1) It is the Secretary of State’s duty to establish in accordance with this [<sup>F107</sup>section, in the case of the area of each Health Authority, a council for the area, or separate councils for such separate parts of the area] as he thinks fit, and such a council shall be called a Community Health Council.
- (2) The Secretary of State—

**Status:** Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) may if he thinks fit discharge this duty by establishing a Community Health Council for a district which includes the areas or parts of the areas of two or more <sup>F108</sup>Health Authorities], but
  - (b) shall be treated as not having discharged that duty unless he secures that there is no part of the area of <sup>F109</sup>a Health Authority] which is not included in some Community Health Council's district.
- (3) The additional provisions of Schedule 7 to this Act have effect in relation to Community Health Councils.

#### Textual Amendments

**F107** Words in s. 20(1) substituted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), **Sch. 1 para. 11(a)** (with Sch. 2 paras. 6, 16)

**F108** Words in s. 20(2)(a) substituted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), **Sch. 1 para. 11(b)(i)** (with Sch. 2 paras. 6, 16)

**F109** Words in s. 20(2)(b) substituted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), **Sch. 1 para. 11(b)(ii)** (with Sch. 2 paras. 6, 16)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C13** S. 20 modified (1.12.1998) by 1998 c. 38, s. 27(7)(b) (with ss. 139(2), 141(1), 143(2)); S.I. 1998/2789, art. 2

### Co-operation and assistance

#### 21 Local social services authorities.

- (1) Subject to paragraphs (d) and (e) of section 3(1) above, the services described in Schedule 8 to this Act in relation to—
- (a) care of mothers <sup>F110</sup> . . . ,
  - (b) prevention, care and after-care,
  - (c) home help and laundry facilities,
- are functions exercisable by local social services authorities, and that Schedule has effect accordingly.
- (2) A local social services authority who provide premises, furniture or equipment for any of the purposes of this Act may permit the use of the premises, furniture or equipment—
- (a) by any other local social services authority, or
  - (b) by any of the bodies constituted under this Act, or
  - (c) by a local education authority.

This permission may be on such terms (including terms with respect to the services of any staff employed by the authority giving permission) as may be agreed.

- (3) A local social services authority may provide (or improve or furnish) residential accommodation—
- (a) for officers employed by them for the purposes of any of their functions as a local social services authority, or
  - (b) for officers employed by a voluntary organisation for the purposes of any services provided under this section and Schedule 8.

*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Textual Amendments

**F110** Words in s. 21(1)(a) repealed (14.10.1991) by Children Act 1989 (c. 41, SIF 20), s. 108(7), **Sch. 15** (with s. 108(6), Sch. 14 paras. 1(1), 27(4)); S.I. 1991/828, **art. 3(2)**

### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C14** S. 21 restricted (8.1.2003) by Nationality, Immigration and Asylum Act 2002 (c. 41), ss. 54, 162(2), **Sch. 3**; S.I. 2002/2811, **art. 2**, Sch.

## 22 Co-operation between health authorities and local authorities.

[<sup>F111</sup>(1) In exercising their respective functions NHS bodies (on the one hand) and local authorities (on the other) shall co-operate with one another in order to secure and advance the health and welfare of the people of England and Wales.

(1A) In this section “NHS body” means—

[ a Strategic Health Authority;]  
<sup>F112</sup>(za)

(a) a Health Authority;

(b) a Special Health Authority;

(c) a Primary Care Trust; <sup>F113</sup> . . .

[ a Local Health Board; or]  
<sup>F114</sup>(cc)

(d) an NHS trust.]

[<sup>F115</sup>(2) There shall be committees, to be called joint consultative committees, who shall [<sup>F116</sup>advise][<sup>F117</sup>bodies represented on them] on the performance of their duties under subsection (1) above, and on the planning and operation of services of common concern to those authorities. <sup>F118</sup> . . .

[ Except as provided by an order under the following provisions of this section, each <sup>F119</sup>(3) joint consultative committee shall represent one or more Health Authorities together with, in the case of each, one or more associated local authorities; and a Health Authority shall be represented together with each of the local authorities associated with that Health Authority in one or other of the committees (but not necessarily the same committee).

(3ZA) For the purposes of subsection (3) above a local authority is associated with a Health Authority if it is a local authority whose area is wholly or partly within the area of the Health Authority.]

[ It is the Secretary of State’s duty by order to secure as respects each joint consultative <sup>F120</sup>(3A) committee that it includes additional members appointed in a manner specified in the order by voluntary organisations.]

(4) The Secretary of State shall have power by order to provide for any matter relating to joint consultative committees, and such an order may in particular—

(a) provide for the way in which the provisions of subsections (2) and (3) above are to be carried out, or provide for varying the arrangements set out in those subsections;

**Status:** Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) provide, where it appears to the Secretary of State appropriate, for [<sup>F121</sup>a Health Authority to be represented on a joint consultative committee together with a local authority none of whose area is within the area of the Health Authority;]
  - (c) afford a choice to any authorities as to the number of joint consultative committees on which they are to be represented, and provide for the case where the authorities cannot agree on the choice;
  - (d) authorise or require a joint consultative committee to appoint any sub-committee or to join with another joint consultative committee or other joint consultative committees in appointing a joint sub-committee;
  - (e) authorise or require the appointment to a joint consultative committee, or to any sub-committee, of persons who are [<sup>F122</sup>neither—
    - (i) members of the authorities represented by the joint consultative committee; nor
    - (ii) appointed by virtue of an order under subsection (3A) above];
  - (f) require the authorities represented on a joint consultative committee to defray the expenses of the committee, and of any sub-committee, in such shares as may be determined by or under the order, and provide for the way in which any dispute between those authorities concerning the expenses is to be resolved; and
  - (g) require those authorities to make reports to the Secretary of State on the work of the joint consultative committee and of any sub-committee.
- (5) Before making an order under this section the Secretary of State shall consult with such associations of local authorities as appear to him to be concerned, and with any local authority with whom consultation appears to him to be desirable.
- [ Without prejudice to the generality of section 126(4) below, the power to make an <sup>F123</sup>(6) order conferred by subsection (3A) above may be exercised so as to make different provision for England and Wales and different provision for different communities in either.]]

#### Textual Amendments

- F111** S. 22(1)(1A) substituted (1.4.2000 for E. and 1.12.2000 for W. for specified purposes and otherwise *prosp.*) for s. 22(1) by 1999 c. 8, ss. 27, 67(1); S.I. 1999/2793, art. 2(3)(b); S.I. 2000/2991, art. 2(1), Sch. 1
- F112** S. 22(1A)(za) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), s. 1(3), Sch. 1 Pt. 1 para. 10; S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(c)
- F113** Word in s. 22(1A)(c) repealed (10.10.2002 for W., otherwise *prosp.*) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 6(2), 42(3), Sch. 5 para. 8, Sch. 9 Pt. 1; S.I. 2002/2532, art. 2
- F114** S. 22(1A)(cc) inserted (10.10.2002 for W., otherwise *prosp.*) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 6(2), 42(3), Sch. 5 para. 8; S.I. 2002/2532, art. 2
- F115** S. 22(2)-(6) repealed (9.2.2001 for E.W.) by 1999 c. 8, ss. 65(2), 67(1), Sch. 5; S.I. 2001/270, art. 2(c), Sch.
- F116** Word in s. 22(2) inserted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), Sch. 1 para. 12(b) (with Sch. 2 paras. 6, 16)
- F117** Words substituted by Health and Social Security Act 1984 (c. 48, SIF 113:1), s. 5(4), Sch. 3 para. 3(b)
- F118** Table in s. 22(2) repealed (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 5(1)(2), 8(1), Sch. 1 para. 12(c), Sch. 3 (with Sch. 2 paras. 6, 16)
- F119** S. 22(3)(3ZA) substituted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) for s. 22(3) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), Sch. 1 para. 12(d) (with Sch. 2 paras. 6, 16)

*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F120** S. 22(3A) inserted by Health and Social Services and Social Security Adjudications Act 1983 (c. 41, SIF 113:3), s. 12, **Sch. 5 para. 2(a)**
- F121** Words in s. 22(4)(b) substituted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), **Sch. 1 para. 12(e)** (with Sch. 2 paras. 6, 16)
- F122** Words substituted by Health and Social Services and Social Security Adjudications Act 1983 (c. 41 SIF 113:3), s. 12, Sch. 5 para. 2(b)
- F123** S. 22(6) inserted by Health and Social Services and Social Security Adjudications Act 1983 (c. 41, SIF 113:3), s. 12, **Sch. 5 para. 2(c)**

## 23 Voluntary organisations and other bodies.

- (1) The Secretary of State may, where he considers it appropriate, arrange with any person or body (including a voluntary organisation) for that person or body to provide, or assist in providing, any service under this Act.

..... F124

- (2) The Secretary of State may make available—
- to any person or body (including a voluntary organisation) carrying out any arrangements under subsection (1) above, or
  - to any voluntary organisation eligible for assistance under section 64 or section 65 of the Health Services and Public Health Act 1968 (assistance made available by the Secretary of State or local authorities),
- any facilities (including goods or materials, or the use of any premises and the use of any vehicle, plant or apparatus) provided by him for any service under this Act; and, where anything is so made available, the services of persons employed by the Secretary of State or by a [F125Strategic Health Authority,][F126Health Authority [F127, Special Health Authority [F128, Primary Care Trust or Local Health Board]]] in connection with it.
- (3) The powers conferred by this section may be exercised on such terms as may be agreed, including terms as to the making of payments by or to the Secretary of State, and any goods or materials may be made available either temporarily or permanently.
- (4) The Secretary of State may by order provide that, in relation to a vehicle which is made available by him in pursuance of this section and is used in accordance with the terms on which it is so made available, [F129the Vehicle Excise and Registration Act 1994] and [F130Part VI of the Road Traffic Act 1988] shall have effect with such modifications as are specified in the order.
- (5) Any power to supply goods or materials conferred by this section includes a power to purchase and store them and includes a power to arrange with third parties for the supply of goods or materials by those third parties.

### Textual Amendments

- F124** Para. repealed by Health Services Act 1980 (c. 53, SIF 113:2), **Sch. 7**
- F125** Words in s. 23(2) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 1(3), 42(3), **Sch. 1 Pt. 1 para. 11**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(c)**
- F126** Words in s. 23(2) substituted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), **Sch. 1 para. 13** (with Sch. 2 paras. 6, 16)
- F127** Words in s. 23(2) substituted (8.2.2000) by S.I. 2000/90, **art. 3(1)**, **Sch. 1 para. 13(2)** (with **art. 2(5)**)



**Status:** Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

**F128** Words in s. 23(2) substituted (10.10.2002 for W., otherwise prosp.) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 6(2), 42(3), **Sch. 5 para. 9**; S.I. 2002/2532, **art. 2**

**F129** Words in s. 23(4) substituted (1.9.1994) by 1994 c. 22, ss. 63, 66(1), **Sch. 3 para. 10** (with s. 57(4))

**F130** Words substituted by Road Traffic (Consequential Provisions) Act 1988 (c. 54, SIF 107:1), s. 4, **Sch. 3 para. 18(1)**

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C15** S. 23(1)-(3): functions of local authority not to be responsibility of an executive of the authority (1.4.2000) by virtue of S.I. 2000/695, reg. 3(2)(a), **Sch. 1**

**C16** S. 23(1)-(3): transfer of functions (E.) (1.4.2001) by S.I. 2001/747, regs. 2(1), 3, 4, **Sch. 1**

24 ..... <sup>F131</sup>

**Textual Amendments**

**F131** S. 24 repealed by Overseas Development and Co-operation Act 1980 (c. 63, SIF 88), s. 18, Sch. 2 Pt. I

**25 Supplies not readily obtainable.**

Where the Secretary of State has acquired—

- (a) supplies of human blood for the purposes of any service under this Act, or
- (b) any part of a human body for the purpose of, or in the course of providing, any such service, or
- (c) supplies of any other substances or preparations not readily obtainable,

he may arrange to make such supplies or that part available (on such terms, including terms as to charges, as he thinks fit) to any person.

This section is subject to section 62 below (restriction of powers under <sup>F132</sup>section 25]).

**Textual Amendments**

**F132** Words substituted by Health and Medicines Act 1988 (c. 49, SIF 113:2), s. 25(1), **Sch. 2 para. 2**

**26 Supply of goods and services by Secretary of State.**

(1) The Secretary of State may—

- (a) supply to local authorities, and to such public bodies or classes of public bodies as he may determine, any goods or materials of a kind used in the health service;
- (b) make available to local authorities, and to those bodies or classes of bodies, any facilities (including the use of any premises and the use of any vehicle, plant or apparatus) provided by him <sup>F133</sup>or by a Primary Care Trust] for any service under this act, and the services of persons employed by the Secretary of State or by a <sup>F134</sup>Strategic Health Authority,]<sup>F135</sup>Health Authority [<sup>F136</sup>Special Health Authority [<sup>F137</sup>, Primary Care Trust or Local Health Board]]];
- (c) carry out maintenance work in connection with any land or building for the maintenance of which a local authority is responsible.

*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

In this subsection—

“maintenance work” includes minor renewals, minor improvements and minor extensions; and

“public bodies” includes public bodies in Northern Ireland.

[<sup>F138</sup>(2) The Secretary of State may supply or make available to persons—

- (a) providing general medical services, general dental services, general ophthalmic services or pharmaceutical services, or
- (b) providing, in accordance with section 28C arrangements, personal medical services, personal dental services or other services of a kind that may be provided under this Part,

such goods, materials or other facilities as may be prescribed.]

(3) The Secretary of State shall make available to local authorities—

- (a) any services or other facilities (excluding the services of any person but including goods or materials, the use of any premises and the use of any vehicle, plant or apparatus) provided under this Act,
- (b) the services provided as part of the health service by any person employed by the Secretary of State or a [<sup>F139</sup>Strategic Health Authority,][<sup>F135</sup>Health Authority [<sup>F140</sup>Special Health Authority or Primary Care Trust]], and
- (c) the services of any medical practitioner, dental practitioner or nurse employed by the Secretary of State or a [<sup>F141</sup>Strategic Health Authority,][<sup>F135</sup>Health Authority [<sup>F140</sup>Special Health Authority or Primary Care Trust]] otherwise than to provide services which are part of the health service,

so far as is reasonably necessary and practicable to enable local authorities to discharge their functions relating to social services, education and public health.

[<sup>F142</sup>(4) The Secretary of State may arrange to make available to local authorities the services of persons of the following descriptions, that is to say—

- (a) persons providing general medical services, general dental services, general ophthalmic services or pharmaceutical services,

[<sup>F143</sup>(aa) persons performing, in accordance with section 28C arrangements, personal medical services, personal dental services or other services of a kind that may be provided under this Part,] and

- (b) persons providing [<sup>F144</sup>Strategic Health Authorities,][<sup>F145</sup>Health Authorities [<sup>F146</sup>Special Health Authorities or Primary Care Trusts]] with services of a kind provided as part of the health service,

so far as is reasonably necessary and practicable to enable local authorities to discharge their functions relating to social services, education and public health.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F133** Words in s. 26(1)(b) inserted (4.1.2000 for E. and otherwise *prosp.*) by 1999 c. 8, ss. 65(2), 67(1), **Sch. 4 para. 11(a)**; S.I. 1999/2342, art. 2(3), **Sch. 2**

**F134** Words in s. 26(1)(b) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 1(3), 42(3), **Sch. 1 Pt. 1 para. 12(a)**; S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(c)

**F135** Words in s. 26 substituted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), **Sch. 1 para. 14(a)**

**F136** Words in s. 26(1)(b) substituted (4.1.2000 for E. and otherwise *prosp.*) by 1999 c. 8, ss. 65(2), 67(1), **Sch. 4 para. 11(a)**; S.I. 1999/2342, art. 2(3), **Sch. 2**



**Status:** Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- F137** Words in s. 26(1)(b) substituted (10.10.2002 for W., otherwise prosp.) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 6(2), 42(3), **Sch. 5 para. 10**; S.I. 2002/2532, **art. 2**
- F138** S. 26(2) substituted (1.4.1998) by 1997 c. 46, s. 41(10), **Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 5(2)**; S.I. 1998/631, art. 2(b), **Sch. 2** (subject to arts. 3-5) (as amended (13.8.1998) by S.I. 1998/1998, **art. 3(3)**)
- F139** Words in s. 26(3)(b) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 1(3), 42(3), **Sch. 1 Pt. 1 para. 12(b)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(c)**
- F140** Words in s. 26(3)(b)(c) substituted (4.1.2000 for E. and otherwise *prosp.*) by 1999 c. 8, ss. 65(1), 67(1), **Sch. 4 para. 11(b)**; S.I. 1999/2342, art. 2(3), **Sch. 2**
- F141** Words in s. 26(3)(c) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 1(3), 42(3), **Sch. 1 Pt. 1 para. 12(b)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(c)**
- F142** S. 26(4) added by Health Services Act 1980 (c. 53, SIF 113:2), **s. 3(1)**
- F143** S. 26(4)(aa) inserted (1.4.1998) by 1997 c. 46, s. 41(10), **Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 5(3)**; S.I. 1998/631, art. 2(b), **Sch. 2** (subject to arts. 3-5) (as amended (13.8.1998) by S.I. 1998/1998, **art. 3(3)**)
- F144** Words in s. 26(4)(b) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 1(3), 42(3), **Sch. 1 Pt. 1 para. 12(c)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(c)**
- F145** Words in s. 26(4)(b) substituted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), **Sch. 1 para. 14(b)**
- F146** Words in s. 26(4)(b) substituted (4.1.2000 for E. and otherwise *prosp.*) by 1999 c. 8, ss. 65(1), 67(1), **Sch. 4 para. 11(c)**; S.I. 1999/2342, art. 2(3), **Sch. 2**

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C17** S. 26: functions of local authority not to be responsibility of an executive of the authority (1.4.2000) by virtue of S.I. 2000/695, reg. 3(2)(a), **Sch. 1**
- C18** S. 26(1)-(4): transfer of functions (E.) (1.4.2001) by S.I. 2001/747, regs. 2(1), 3, 4, **Sch. 1**

## 27 Conditions of supply under s. 26.

- (1) It is the Secretary of State's duty, before he makes the services of any officer of a [<sup>F147</sup>Strategic Health Authority,][<sup>F148</sup>Health Authority [<sup>F149</sup>Special Health Authority [<sup>F150</sup>, Primary Care Trust or Local Health Board]]] available in pursuance of subsection (1)(b) or subsection (3)(b) or (c) of section 26 above, to consult the officer or a body recognised by the Secretary of State as representing the officer about the matter, or to satisfy himself that the [<sup>F151</sup>Strategic Health Authority,][<sup>F148</sup>Health Authority [<sup>F149</sup>Special Health Authority [<sup>F152</sup>, Primary Care Trust or Local Health Board]]] has consulted the officer about the matter.
- (2) The Secretary of State shall be entitled to disregard the provisions of subsection (1) above in a case where he considers it necessary to make the services of an officer available as mentioned in that subsection for the purpose of dealing temporarily with an emergency, and has previously consulted such a body about the making available of services in an emergency.
- (3) For the purposes of subsection (1)(b) or subsection (3)(b) or (c) of section 26 the Secretary of State may give such directions to [<sup>F153</sup>Strategic Health Authorities,][<sup>F154</sup>Health Authorities [<sup>F155</sup>Special Health Authorities [<sup>F156</sup>, Primary Care Trusts and Local Health Boards]]] to make the services of their officers available as he considers appropriate; [<sup>F157</sup> . . .].
- (4) The powers conferred by this section and section 26 may be exercised on such terms as may be agreed, including terms as to the making of payments to the Secretary of State, and such charges may be made by the Secretary of State in respect of services or facilities provided under subsection (3) of section 26 as may be agreed between

*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

the Secretary of State and the local authority or, in default of agreement, as may be determined by arbitration.

- (5) The Secretary of State may by order provide that, in relation to a vehicle which is made available by him in pursuance of section 26 and is used in accordance with the terms on which it is so made available, [<sup>F158</sup>the Vehicle Excise and Registration Act 1994] and [<sup>F159</sup>Part VI of the <sup>M9</sup>Road Traffic Act 1988] shall have effect with such modifications as are specified in the order.
- (6) Any power to supply goods or materials conferred by section 26 includes a power to purchase and store them, and a power to arrange with third parties for the supply of goods or materials by those third parties.

### Textual Amendments

- F147** Words in s. 27(1) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 1(3), 42(3), **Sch. 1 Pt. 1 para. 13(a)(i)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(c)**
- F148** Words in s. 27(1) substituted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), **Sch. 1 para. 15(a)**
- F149** Words in s. 27(1) substituted (4.1.2000 for E. and otherwise *prosp.*) by 1999 c. 8, ss. 65(1), 67(2), **Sch. 4 para. 12(2)**; S.I. 1999/2342, art. 2(3), **Sch. 2**
- F150** Words in s. 27(1) substituted (10.10.2002 for W., otherwise *prosp.*) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 6(3), 42(3), **Sch. 5 para. 11(a)**; S.I. 2002/2532, **art. 2**
- F151** Words in s. 27(1) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 1(3), 42(3), **Sch. 1 Pt. 1 para. 13(a)(ii)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(c)**
- F152** Words in s. 27(1) substituted (10.10.2002 for W., otherwise *prosp.*) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 6(3), 42(3), **Sch. 5 para. 11(a)**; S.I. 2002/2532, **art. 2**
- F153** Words in s. 27(3) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 1(3), 42(3), **Sch. 1 Pt. 1 para. 13(b)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(c)**
- F154** Words in s. 27(3) substituted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), **Sch. 1 para. 15(b)(i)**
- F155** Words in s. 27(3) substituted (4.1.2000 for E. and otherwise *prosp.*) by 1999 c. 8, ss. 65(1), 67(2), **Sch. 4 para. 12(3)(a)**; S.I. 1999/2342, art. 2(3), **Sch. 2**
- F156** Words in s. 27(3) substituted (10.10.2002 for W., otherwise *prosp.*) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 6(3), 42(3), **Sch. 5 para. 11(b)**; S.I. 2002/2532, **art. 2**
- F157** Words in s. 27(3) omitted (1.9.1999 for E. and 1.12.1999 for W.) by virtue of 1999 c. 8, ss. 65(1), **Sch. 4 para. 12(3)(b)**; S.I. 1999/2342, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**; S.I. 1999/3184, art. 2(2), **Sch. 2** and repealed (1.4.2000) by 1999 c. 8, ss. 65(2), **Sch. 5**; S.I. 2000/1041, art. 2(d), **Sch.**
- F158** Words in s. 27(5) substituted (1.9.1994) by 1994 c. 22, ss. 63, 66(1), **Sch. 3 para. 10** (with s. 57(4))
- F159** Words substituted by Road Traffic (Consequential Provisions) Act 1988 (c. 54, SIF 107:1), s. 4, **Sch. 3 para. 18(2)**

### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C19** S. 27(1)(2)(4): functions of local authority not to be responsibility of an executive of the authority (1.4.2000) by virtue of S.I. 2000/695, reg. 3(2)(a), **Sch. 1**
- C20** S. 27(1)(2)(4): transfer of functions (E.) (1.4.2001) by S.I. 2001/747, regs. 2(1), 3, 4, **Sch. 1**

### Marginal Citations

- M9** 1988 c. 52(107:1).

*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## 28 Supply of goods and services by local authorities.

- (1) In the <sup>M10</sup>Local Authorities (Goods and Services) Act 1970 the expression “public body” includes any [<sup>F160</sup>Strategic Health Authority,]<sup>F161</sup>Health Authority [<sup>F162</sup>Special Health Authority [<sup>F163</sup>, Primary Care Trust or Local Health Board]] and so far as relates to his functions under this Act includes the Secretary of State.
- (2) The provisions of subsection (1) above have effect as if made by an order under section 1(5) of that Act of 1970, and accordingly may be varied or revoked by such an order.
- (3) Every local authority shall make available to [<sup>F164</sup>Strategic Health Authorities,]<sup>F165</sup>Health Authorities, Special Health Authorities [<sup>F166</sup>Primary Care Trusts [<sup>F167</sup>, Local Health Boards]]<sup>F168</sup>and NHS trusts] acting in the area of the local authority the services of persons employed by the local authority for the purposes of the local authority’s functions under the <sup>M11</sup>Local Authorities Social Services Act 1970 so far as is reasonably necessary and practicable to enable [<sup>F169</sup>Strategic Health Authorities,]<sup>F165</sup>Health Authorities, Special Health Authorities [<sup>F170</sup>Primary Care Trusts [<sup>F170</sup>, Local Health Boards]]<sup>F168</sup>and NHS trusts] to discharge their functions under this Act [<sup>F171</sup>and the National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990].

<sup>F172</sup>(4) .....

### Textual Amendments

- F160** Words in s. 28(1) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 1(3), 42(3), **Sch. 1 Pt. 1 para. 14(a)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(c)**
- F161** Words in s. 28(1) substituted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), **Sch. 1 para. 16(a)**
- F162** Words in s. 28(1) substituted (4.1.2000 for E. and otherwise *prosp.*) by 1999 c. 8, ss. 65(1), 67(2), **Sch. 4 para. 13(a)**; S.I. 1999/2342, art. 2(3), **Sch. 2**
- F163** Words in s. 28(1) substituted (10.10.2002 for W., otherwise *prosp.*) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 6(2), 42(3), **Sch. 5 para. 12(a)**; S.I. 2002/2532, **art. 2**
- F164** Words in s. 28(3) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 1(3), 42(3), **Sch. 1 Pt. 1 para. 14(b)(i)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(c)**
- F165** Words in s. 28(3) substituted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), **Sch. 1 para. 16(b)**
- F166** Words in s. 28(3) inserted (4.1.2000 for E. and otherwise *prosp.*) by 1999 c. 8, ss. 65(1), 67(2), **Sch. 4 para. 13(b)**; S.I. 1999/2342, art. 2(3), **Sch. 2**
- F167** Words in s. 28(3) inserted (10.10.2002 for W., otherwise *prosp.*) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 6(2), 42(3), **Sch. 5 para. 12(b)**; S.I. 2002/2532, **art. 2**
- F168** Words inserted by National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990 (c. 19, SIF 113:2), s. 5(8), **Sch. 2 para. 21**
- F169** Words in s. 28(3) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 1(3), 42(3), **Sch. 1 Pt. 1 para. 14(b)(ii)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(c)**
- F170** Words in s. 28(3) inserted (10.10.2002 for W., otherwise *prosp.*) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 6(2), 42(3), **Sch. 5 para. 12(b)**; S.I. 2002/2532, **art. 2**
- F171** Words added by National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990 (c. 19, SIF 113:2), s. 5(8), **Sch. 2 para. 21**
- F172** S. 28(4) repealed (*retrospectively*) by Health and Medicines Act 1988 (c. 49, SIF 113:2), ss. 19, 25(2), **Sch. 3**

*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Marginal Citations

**M10** 1970 c. 39(81:4).

**M11** 1970 c. 42(81:3).

## [<sup>F173</sup>28A Power to make payments towards expenditure on community services.

- (1) This section applies to the following [<sup>F174</sup>[<sup>F175</sup>bodies]—
- (a) a Health Authority;]. . .
  - [ a Primary Care Trust[<sup>F177</sup>; and]]
  - <sup>F176</sup>(b) [ a Local Health Board.]
  - <sup>F178</sup>(c)
- (2) [<sup>F179</sup>A body to which] this section applies may, if they think fit, make payments—
- (a) to a local social services authority towards expenditure incurred or to be incurred by them in connection with [<sup>F180</sup>any social services functions (within the meaning of the Local Authority Social Services Act 1970)], other than functions under section 3 of the <sup>M12</sup>Disabled Persons (Employment) Act 1958;
  - (b) to a district council, [<sup>F181</sup>or to a Welsh county council or county borough council,] towards expenditure incurred or to be incurred by them in connection with their functions under section 8 of the <sup>M13</sup>Residential Homes Act 1980 or Part II of Schedule 9 to the <sup>M14</sup>Health and Social Services and Social Security Adjudications Act 1983 (meals and recreation for old people);
  - (c) to an authority who are a local education authority for the purposes of [<sup>F182</sup>the Education Act 1996], towards expenditure incurred or to be incurred by them in connection with their functions under [<sup>F183</sup>the Education Acts (within the meaning of that Act)], in so far as they perform those functions for the benefit of disabled persons;
  - <sup>F184</sup>[ (d) to a local housing authority within the meaning of the <sup>M15</sup>Housing Act 1985, towards expenditure incurred or to be incurred by them in connection with their functions under Part II of that Act (provision of housing); and]
  - (e) to the following bodies, in respect of expenditure incurred or to be incurred by them in connection with the provision of housing accommodation,—
    - [ a registered social landlord within the meaning of the Housing Act
    - <sup>F185</sup>(i) 1985 (see section 5(4) and (5) of that Act);.]
    - (ii) the Commission for the New Towns;
    - (iii) a new town development corporation;
    - (iv) an urban development corporation established under the <sup>M16</sup>Local Government, Planning and Land Act 1980;
    - (v) the Housing Corporation; <sup>F186</sup>. . .
    - <sup>F186</sup>(vi) . . . . .
    - <sup>F187</sup>(vii) . . . . .
- [ A body to which this section applies may, if they think fit, make payments to a local
- <sup>F188</sup>(2A) authority towards expenditure incurred or to be incurred by the authority in connection with the performance of any of the authority's functions which, in the opinion of the body,—
- (a) have an effect on the health of any individuals,
  - (b) have an effect on, or are affected by, any NHS functions, or

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (c) are connected with any NHS functions.
- (2B) In this section “NHS functions” means functions exercised by a [<sup>F189</sup>Strategic Health Authority,] Health Authority, Special Health Authority, Primary Care Trust [<sup>F190</sup>, Local Health Board] or NHS trust.]
- (3) A payment under this section may be made in respect of expenditure of a capital or of a revenue nature or in respect of both kinds of expenditure.
- [ No payment shall be made under this section in respect of any expenditure unless
- <sup>F191</sup>(4) the expenditure has been recommended for a payment under this section by a joint consultative committee on which the authority proposing to make the payment are represented.]
- (5) The Secretary of State may by directions prescribe conditions relating to payments under this section.
- (6) The power to give such directions may be exercised so as to make, as respects the cases in relation to which it is exercised, the same provision for all cases, or different provision for different cases or different classes of case, or different provision as respects the same case or class of case for different purposes.
- (7) Without prejudice to the generality of subsection (5) above, the power may be exercised—
- (a) so as to make different provision for England and Wales and different provision for different [<sup>F192</sup>areas] in either; and
- (b) so as to require, in such circumstances as may be specified,—
- (i) repayment of the whole or any part of a payment under this section;
- (ii) payment, in respect of property acquired with money paid under this section, of an amount representing the whole or part of an increase in the value of the property which has occurred since its acquisition.
- (8) No payment shall be made under this section in respect of any expenditure unless the conditions relating to it—
- [ accord with the advice given by the joint consultative committee in making the
- <sup>F191</sup>(a) recommendation for a payment under this section in respect of the expenditure in question; and]]
- (b) conform with the conditions prescribed for payments of that description under subsection (5) above.
- (9) Where [<sup>F193</sup>the expenditure in respect of which a payment under this section is proposed to be made] is expenditure in connection with services to be provided by a voluntary organisation—
- (a) the [<sup>F194</sup>body] who are to make the payment may make payments to the voluntary organisation towards the expenditure incurred or to be incurred by the organisation in connection with the provision of those services, instead of or in addition to making payments under subsection (2) [<sup>F195</sup>or (2A)] above; and
- (b) an authority of one of the descriptions specified in paragraph (a), (b), (c) or (d) of subsection (2) above [<sup>F196</sup>, or in subsection (2A) above.] and who have received payments under that subsection may make out of the sums paid to them payments to the voluntary organisation towards expenditure incurred or to be incurred by the organisation in connection with the provision of those services,

*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

but no payment shall be made under this subsection except subject to conditions [F197 which conform with the conditions prescribed for payments of that description under subsection (5) above.]

### Textual Amendments

- F173** Ss. 28A, 28B substituted for s. 28A by [Health and Social Services and Social Security Adjudications Act 1983 \(c. 41, SIF 113:3\)](#), **s. 1**
- F174** Words in s. 28A(1) substituted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), **Sch. 1 para. 17(a)**
- F175** Word in s. 28A(1) substituted (1.11.1999 for E., 1.12.2000 for W. for specified purposes and otherwise *prosp.*) by 1999 c. 8, **ss. 29(2)(a)**, 67(2); S.I. 1999/2793, art. 2(1)(a), **Sch. 1**; S.I. 2000/2991, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**
- F176** S. 28A(1)(b) substituted (1.4.2000 for E. and otherwise *prosp.*) by 1999 c. 8, **ss. 29(2)(b)**, 67(2); S.I. 1999/2793, **art. 2(3)(b)**
- F177** Word in s. 28A(1)(b) inserted (10.10.2002 for W., otherwise *prosp.*) by [National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 \(c. 17\)](#), ss. 6(3), 42(3), **Sch. 5 para. 13(a)(ii)**; S.I. 2002/2532, **art. 2**
- F178** S. 28A(1)(c) inserted (10.10.2002 for W., otherwise *prosp.*) by [National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 \(c. 17\)](#), ss. 6(2), 42(3), **Sch. 5 para. 13(a)(ii)**; S.I. 2002/2532, **art. 2**
- F179** Words in s. 28A(2) substituted (1.11.1999 for E. and 1.12.2000 for W.) by 1999 c. 8, ss. 65(1), **Sch. 4 para. 14(2)**; S.I. 1999/2793, art. 2(1)(a), **Sch. 1**; S.I. 2000/2991, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**
- F180** Words in s. 28A(2)(a) substituted (E.W.) (26.10.2000 for E. and 28.7.2001 for W.) by 2000 c. 22, ss. 107, 108(4), **Sch. 5 para. 17**; S.I. 2000/2849, **art. 2(1)**
- F181** Words in s. 28A(2)(b) inserted (1.4.1996) by 1994 c. 19, s. 22(4), **Sch. 10 para. 11(2)** (with Sch. 17 paras. 22(1), 23(2)); S.I. 1996/396, art. 3, **Sch. 1**
- F182** Words in s. 28A(2)(c) substituted (1.11.1996) by 1996 c. 56, ss. 582(1), 583(2), **Sch. 37 Pt. I para. 44(a)** (with s. 1(4), Sch. 9 paras. 30, 39, Sch. 39)
- F183** Words in s. 28A(2)(c) substituted (1.11.1996) by 1996 c. 56, ss. 582(1), 583(2), **Sch. 37 Pt. I para. 44(b)** (with s. 1(4), Sch. 9 paras. 30, 39, Sch. 39)
- F184** S. 28A(2)(d) substituted by [Housing \(Consequential Provisions\) Act 1985 \(c. 71, SIF 61\)](#), s. 4, **Sch. 2 para. 38(2)(a)**
- F185** S. 28A(2)(e)(i) substituted (E.W.) (1.10.1996) by S.I. 1996/2325, art. 5(1), **Sch. 2 para. 9(2)**
- F186** S. 28A(2)(e)(vi) and word “and” immediately preceding repealed (1.10.1998) by 1998 c. 38, s. 152, **Sch. 18 Pt. IV** (with ss. 137(1), 139(2), 141(1), 143(2)); S.I. 1998/2244, **art. 4**
- F187** S. 28A(2)(e)(vii) repealed (1.11.1998) by 1998 c. 38, s. 152, **Sch. 18 Pt. VI** (with ss. 137(1), 139(2), 141(1), 143(2)); S.I. 1998/2244, **art. 5**
- F188** S. 28A(2A)(2B) inserted (1.11.1999 for E., 1.12.2000 for W. for specified purposes and otherwise *prosp.*) by 1999 c. 8, **ss. 29(3)**, 67(2); S.I. 1999/2793, art. 2(1)(a), **Sch. 1**; S.I. 2000/2991, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**
- F189** Words in s. 28A(2B) inserted (1.10.2002) by [National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 \(c. 17\)](#), ss. 1(3), 42(3), **Sch. 1 Pt. 1 para. 15**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(c)**
- F190** Words in s. 28A(2B) inserted (10.10.2002 for W., otherwise *prosp.*) by [National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 \(c. 17\)](#), ss. 6(2), 42(3), **Sch. 5 para. 13(b)**; S.I. 2002/2532, **art. 2**
- F191** S. 28A(4)(8)(a) omitted (1.11.1999 for E. for specified purposes, 1.4.2000 for specified other purposes, 1.12.2000 for W. for specified purposes, and 1.1.2001 for other specified purposes) by virtue of 1999 c. 8, ss. 65(1), **Sch. 4 para. 14(3)**; S.I. 1999/2793, art. 2(1)(a)(3)(c)(i), **Sch. 1**; S.I. 2000/2991, art. 2(1)(2), Schs. 1, 2
- F192** Word in s. 28A(7)(a) substituted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), **Sch. 1 para. 17(b)**



**Status:** Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- F193** Words in s. 28A(9) substituted (1.11.1999 for E., 1.4.2000 for W. for specified purposes and otherwise 1.1.2001) by 1999 c. 8, ss. 65(1), **Sch. 4 para. 14(4)(a)**; S.I. 1999/2793, art. 2(1)(a)(3)(c)(i), **Sch. 1**; S.I. 2000/2991, art. 2(1)(2), Schs. 1, 2
- F194** Word in s. 28A(9)(a) substituted (1.11.1999 for E. and 1.12.2000 for W.) by 1999 c. 8, ss. 65(1), **Sch. 4 para. 14(4)(b)**; S.I. 1999/2793, art. 2(1)(a), **Sch. 1**; S.I. 2000/2991, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**
- F195** Words in s. 28A(9)(a) inserted (1.4.2000 for E. and 1.1.2001 for W.) by 1999 c. 8, ss. 65(1), **Sch. 4 para. 14(4)(c)**; S.I. 1999/2793, **art. 2(3)(c)(i)**; S.I. 2000/2991, art. 2(2), **Sch. 2**
- F196** Words in s. 28A(9)(b) inserted (1.4.2000 for E. and 1.1.2001 for W.) by 1999 c. 8, ss. 65(1), **Sch. 4 para. 14(4)(d)**; S.I. 1999/2793, **art. 2(3)(c)(i)**; S.I. 2000/2991, art. 2(2), **Sch. 2**
- F197** Words in s. 28A(9)(b) substituted (1.11.1999 for E. for specified purposes, 1.4.2000 for specified other purposes, 1.12.2000 for W. and for specified other purposes, 1.1.2001) for s. 28A(b)(i)(ii) by 1999 c. 8, ss. 65(1), **Sch. 4 para. 14(4)(e)**; S.I. 1999/2793, art. 2(1)(a)(3)(c)(i), **Sch. 1**; S.I. 2000/2991, art. 2(1)(2), Schs. 1, 2

#### Marginal Citations

- M12** 1958 c. 33(43:1).  
**M13** 1980 c. 7.  
**M14** 1983 c. 41(113:3).  
**M15** 1985 c. 68(61).  
**M16** 1980 c. 65(81:1, 2) (103:1, 2) (123:1, 2, 3, 4).

### [<sup>F198</sup>28B Power of Secretary of State to make payments towards expenditure on community services in Wales.

- (1) The Secretary of State may, if he thinks fit, make payments—
- (a) to authorities in Wales of any of the descriptions mentioned in paragraphs (a), (b), (c) and (d) of section 28A(2) above, for the purposes respectively mentioned in those paragraphs;
  - (b) to the following bodies, in respect of expenditure incurred or to be incurred by them in connection with the provision of housing accommodation in Wales,  
<sup>F199</sup>
    - [ a registered social landlord within the meaning of the Housing Act <sup>F200</sup>(i) 1985 (see section 5(4) and (5) of that Act);.]
    - (ii) the Commission for the New Towns;
    - (iii) a new town development corporation;
    - (iv) an urban development corporation established under the <sup>M17</sup>Local Government, Planning and Land Act 1980;
    - <sup>F201</sup>(v) . . . . .
    - <sup>F202</sup>(vi) . . . . .
- (2) The Secretary of State may, if he thinks fit, make payments to a voluntary organisation towards expenditure incurred or to be incurred by the organisation in connection with the provision of services for which he could make payments under subsection (1) above.
- (3) A payment under this section may be made in respect of expenditure of a capital or of a revenue nature or in respect of both kinds of expenditure.
- (4) Conditions may be attached to a payment under this section.
- (5) Without prejudice to the generality of subsection (4) above, the conditions that may be attached include conditions requiring, in such circumstances as may be specified,—



*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) repayment of the whole or any part of a payment under this section;
- (b) payment, in respect of property acquired with money paid under this section, of an amount representing the whole or part of an increase in the value of the property which has occurred since its acquisition.

#### Textual Amendments

**F198** Ss. 28A, 28B substituted for s. 28A by [Health and Social Services and Social Security Adjudications Act 1983 \(c. 41, SIF 113:3\)](#), s. 1

**F199** S. 28B(1)(b)(i) substituted by [Housing \(Consequential Provisions\) Act 1985 \(c. 71, SIF 61\)](#), s. 4, [Sch. 2 para. 38\(3\)](#)

**F200** S. 28B(1)(b)(i) substituted (E.W.) (1.10.1996) by [S.I. 1996/2325](#), art. 5(1), [Sch. 2 para. 9\(3\)](#)

**F201** S. 28B(1)(b)(v) repealed (1.11.1998) by virtue of [1998 c. 38](#), s. 152, [Sch. 18 Pt. VI](#) (with ss. 137(1), 139(2), 141(1), 143(2)); [S.I. 1998/2244](#), art. 5

**F202** S. 28B(1)(b)(vi) and the word “and” immediately preceding repealed (1.10.1998) by [1998 c. 38](#), s. 152, [Sch. 18 Pt. IV](#) (with ss. 137(1), 139(2), 141(1), 143(2)); [S.I. 1998/2244](#), art. 4

#### Marginal Citations

**M17** [1980 c. 53\(113:2\)](#).

### [<sup>F203</sup>28BP] Power of local authorities to make payments to NHS bodies.

- (1) A local authority may, if they think fit, make payments to a relevant NHS body towards expenditure incurred or to be incurred by the body in connection with the performance by the body of prescribed functions of the NHS body.
- (2) In this section—
  - “prescribed” means prescribed to any extent by regulations made by the Secretary of State;
  - “relevant NHS body” means a [<sup>F204</sup>Strategic Health Authority or] Health Authority or a Primary Care Trust [<sup>F205</sup>or Local Health Board].
- (3) A payment under this section may be made in respect of expenditure of a capital or of a revenue nature or in respect of both kinds of expenditure.
- (4) The Secretary of State may by directions prescribe conditions relating to payments under this section.
- (5) The power to give such directions may be exercised so as to make, as respects the cases in relation to which it is exercised, the same provision for all cases, or different provision for different cases or different classes of case, or different provision as respects the same case or class of case for different purposes.
- (6) Without prejudice to the generality of subsection (4) above, the power may be exercised—
  - (a) so as to make different provision for England and Wales and different provision for different areas in either; and
  - (b) so as to require, in such circumstances as may be specified—
    - (i) repayment of the whole or any part of a payment under this section; or
    - (ii) payment, in respect of property acquired with money paid under this section, of an amount representing the whole or part of an increase in the value of the property which has occurred since its acquisition.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (7) No payment shall be made under this section in respect of any expenditure unless the conditions relating to it conform with the conditions prescribed for payments of that description under subsection (4) above.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F203** S. 28BB inserted (1.4.2000 for E. and 1.12.2000 for W. for specified purposes and otherwise *prosp.*) by 1999 c. 8, ss. 30, 67(2); S.I. 1999/2793, art. 2(3)(b); S.I. 2000/2991, art. 2(1), Sch. 1
- F204** Words in s. 28BB(2) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 1(3), 42(3), Sch. 1 Pt. 1 para. 16; S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(c)
- F205** Words in s. 28BB(2) inserted (10.10.2002 for W., otherwise *prosp.*) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 6(2), 42(3), {Sch. 5 para. (14)}; S.I. 2002/2532, art. 2

#### [<sup>F206</sup> Provision of personal medical or dental services]

#### Textual Amendments

- F206** Cross-heading inserted (*prosp.*) by 1997 c. 46, ss. 21(1), 41(3)

PROSPECTIVE

#### <sup>F207</sup>28C Personal medical or dental services.

- (1) A [<sup>F208</sup>Strategic Health Authority or a] Health Authority may make one or more agreements with respect to their area, in accordance with the provisions of regulations under section 28E, under which—
- personal medical services are provided (otherwise than by the Authority); or
  - personal dental services are provided (otherwise than by the Authority).
- (2) An agreement made under this section—
- may not combine arrangements for the provision of personal medical services with arrangements for the provision of personal dental services [<sup>F209</sup>, and may not combine arrangements for the provision of personal medical services or personal dental services with arrangements for the provision of local pharmaceutical services under LPS schemes (within the meaning of paragraph 1(3) of Schedule 8A to this Act) or under pilot schemes made under section 28 of the Health and Social Care Act 2001]; but
  - may include arrangements for the provision of services—
    - which are not personal medical services or personal dental services; but
    - which may be provided under this Part.
- (3) Except to such extent as may be prescribed—
- a patient for whom personal medical services are provided in accordance with an agreement made under this section is not to count as a person for whom arrangements must be made by the [<sup>F210</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority concerned under section 29;

*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) a patient for whom personal dental services are provided under an agreement made under this section is not to count as a person for whom arrangements must be made by the [<sup>F211</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority concerned under section 35.
- (4) This Act (and in particular section 17) has effect, in relation to personal medical services or personal dental services provided under an agreement made under this section, as if those services were provided as a result of the delegation by the Secretary of State (by directions given under section [<sup>F212</sup>16D]) of functions of his under this Part.
- (5) The functions of a Health Authority in relation to an agreement made under this section are primary functions of the Authority for the purposes of the <sup>M18</sup>National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990.
- (6) Regulations may provide—
- (a) for functions which are exercisable by a [<sup>F213</sup>Strategic Health Authority or a] Health Authority in relation to an agreement made under this section to be exercisable on behalf of the Authority by a Health Board; and
- (b) for functions which are exercisable by a Health Board in relation to an agreement made under section 17C of the <sup>M19</sup>National Health Service (Scotland) Act 1978 to be exercisable on behalf of the Board by a [<sup>F213</sup>Strategic Health Authority or a] Health Authority.
- (7) For the purposes of this section—
- “personal medical services” means medical services of a kind that may be provided by a general medical practitioner in accordance with arrangements made under Part II; and
- “personal dental services” means dental services of a kind that may be provided by a general dental practitioner in accordance with arrangements made under Part II.

### Textual Amendments

**F207** SS. 28C-28D inserted (*prosp.*) by 1997 c. 46, ss. 21(1), 41(3)

**F208** Words in s. 28C(1) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 4(3), 42(3), **Sch. 3 Pt. 1 para. 7(2)(a)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(c)**

**F209** Words in s. 28C(2)(a) inserted (1.7.2002 for W. and otherwise *prosp.*) by 2001 c. 15, ss. 67(1), 70(2), **Sch. 5 para. 11(4)** (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)); S.I. 2002/1475, **art. 2**, **Sch. Pt. 1**

**F210** Words in s. 28C(3)(a) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 4(3), 42(3), **Sch. 3 Pt. 1 para. 7(2)(b)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(c)**

**F211** Words in s. 28C(3)(b) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 4(3), 42(3), **Sch. 3 Pt. 1 para. 7(2)(b)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(c)**

**F212** Word in s. 28C(4) substituted (1.10.1999 for E. and 1.12.1999 for W.) by 1999 c. 8, ss. 65(1), **Sch. 4 para. 15**; S.I. 1999/2540, **art. 2(1)(a)**, **Sch. 1**; S.I. 1999/3184, **art. 2(2)**, **Sch. 2**

**F213** Words in s. 28C(6)(a)(b) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 4(3), 42(3), **Sch. 3 Pt. 1 para. 7(2)(c)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(c)**

### Marginal Citations

**M18** 1990 c. 19.

**M19** 1978 c. 29.

*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

PROSPECTIVE

**[<sup>F214</sup>28D Persons with whom agreements may be made.**

(1) A [<sup>F215</sup>Strategic Health Authority or a] Health Authority may make an agreement under section 28C only with one or more of the following—

- (a) an NHS trust;
- (b) in the case of an agreement under which personal medical services are provided—
  - (i) a qualifying medical practitioner;
  - (ii) an individual who is providing personal medical services in accordance with section 28C arrangements or section 17C arrangements;
- (c) in the case of an agreement under which personal dental services are provided—
  - (i) a qualifying dental practitioner;
  - (ii) an individual who is providing personal dental services in accordance with section 28C arrangements or section 17C arrangements;
- (d) an NHS employee, a section 28C employee or a section 17C employee;
- (e) a qualifying body.
- [<sup>F216</sup>(f) a Primary Care Trust]

(2) In this section—

“the 1978 Act” means the <sup>M20</sup>National Health Service (Scotland) Act 1978;

“NHS employee” means an individual who, in connection with the provision of services in the health service in England and Wales or Scotland, is employed by—

- (a) an NHS trust;
- (b) in the case of an agreement under which personal medical services are provided—
  - (i) a medical practitioner whose name is included in a medical list kept under this Act or in a corresponding list kept under the 1978 Act; or
  - (ii) a medical practitioner who is providing personal medical services in accordance with section 28C arrangements or section 17C arrangements;
- (c) in the case of an agreement under which personal dental services are provided—
  - (i) a dental practitioner whose name is included in a list prepared in accordance with regulations made under section 36(1)(a) of this Act or section 25(2)(a) of the 1978 Act; or
  - (ii) a dental practitioner who is providing personal dental services in accordance with section 28C arrangements or section 17C arrangements;

“qualifying body” means—

*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

(a) a company which is limited by shares all of which are legally and beneficially owned by persons falling within [F217 paragraph (a), (b), (c), (d) or (f)] of subsection (1); and also

(b) in the case of an agreement under which personal dental services are provided, a body corporate which, in accordance with the provisions of Part IV of the M21 Dentists Act 1984, is entitled to carry on the business of dentistry;

“qualifying dental practitioner” means a dental practitioner who satisfies the conditions imposed by regulations made under section 28E(2)(b) of this Act or section 17E(2)(b) of the 1978 Act;

“qualifying medical practitioner” means a medical practitioner who satisfies the conditions imposed by regulations made under section 28E(2)(b) of this Act or section 17E(2)(b) of the 1978 Act;

“section 17C arrangements” means arrangements for the provision of services made under section 17C of the 1978 Act;

“section 17C employee” means an individual who, in connection with the provision of services in accordance with section 17C arrangements, is employed by an individual providing those services;

“section 28C arrangements” means arrangements for the provision of services made under section 28C; and

“section 28C employee” means an individual who, in connection with the provision of services in accordance with section 28C arrangements, is employed by an individual providing those services.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F214** SS. 28C-28D inserted (*prosp.*) by 1997 c. 46, ss. 21(1), 41(3)

**F215** Words in s. 28D(1) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 4(3), 42(3), Sch. 3 Pt. 1 para. 7(3); S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(c)

**F216** S. 28D(1)(f) inserted (4.1.2000 for E. and otherwise *prosp.*) by 1999 c. 8, ss. 65(1), 67(2), Sch. 4 para. 16(a); S.I. 1999/2540, art. 2(2)

**F217** S. 28D(2); words in para. (a) of the definition of “qualifying body” substituted (4.1.2000 for E. and otherwise *prosp.*) by 1999 c. 8, ss. 65(1), 67(2), Sch. 4 para. 16(b); S.I. 1999/2540, art. 2(2)

#### Marginal Citations

**M20** 1978 c. 29.

**M21** 1984 c. 24.

### [F218] 28DA Lists of persons who may perform personal medical services or personal dental services

(1) The Secretary of State may make regulations providing for the preparation and publication [F219 by each Primary Care Trust and] by each Health Authority of one or more lists of—

- (a) medical practitioners who may perform personal medical services in accordance with section 28C arrangements,
- (b) dental practitioners who may perform personal dental services in accordance with section 28C arrangements.

(2) Such a list is referred to in this section as a “services list”.

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (3) The regulations may, in particular, include provision as to—
- (a) the [<sup>F220</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority to which an application for inclusion in a services list is to be made,
  - (b) the procedure for applying for inclusion, including any information to be supplied to the [<sup>F221</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority (whether by the applicant or by arrangement with him),
  - (c) grounds on which the [<sup>F222</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority may, or must, refuse a person's application for inclusion in a services list (including his unsuitability for inclusion in such a list), or on which they may defer their decision on the application,
  - (d) requirements with which a person included in a services list must comply (including the declaration of financial interests and of gifts and other benefits),
  - (e) grounds on which a [<sup>F223</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority may, or must, suspend or remove a person from a services list, the procedure for doing so, and the consequences of doing so,
  - (f) payments to or in respect of persons who are suspended from a services list (including provision for the amount of the payments, or the method of calculating the amount, to be determined by the Secretary of State or by another person appointed for the purpose by the Secretary of State),
  - (g) the supply to the [<sup>F224</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority by an applicant for inclusion in a services list, or by a person included in one, of a criminal conviction certificate under section 112 of the Police Act 1997 (c. 50), a criminal record certificate under section 113 of that Act or an enhanced criminal record certificate under section 115 of that Act,
  - (h) circumstances in which a person included in a services list may not withdraw from it,
  - (i) criteria to be applied in making decisions under the regulations,
  - (j) appeals against decisions of [<sup>F225</sup>Primary Care Trusts and] Health Authorities under the regulations,
  - (k) the disclosure by a [<sup>F226</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority, to prescribed persons or persons of prescribed descriptions, of information of a prescribed description about applicants for inclusion in a services list, refusals of such applications, and suspensions and removals from that list.
- (4) The regulations may, in particular, also provide for—
- (a) a person's inclusion in a services list to be subject to conditions determined by the [<sup>F227</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority,
  - (b) the [<sup>F228</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority to vary the conditions or impose different ones,
  - (c) the consequences of failing to comply with a condition (including removal from the list), and
  - (d) the review by the [<sup>F229</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority of their decisions made by virtue of regulations under this subsection.
- (5) The imposition of such conditions must be with a view to—
- (a) preventing any prejudice to the efficiency of the services to which the services list relates; or
  - (b) preventing any acts or omissions of the type described in section 49F(3)(a) below.



*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (6) Regulations may provide—
- (a) that no person may perform personal medical services in accordance with section 28C arrangements unless he is included in a medical list, a supplementary list under section 43D or a services list,
  - (b) that no person may perform personal dental services in accordance with section 28C arrangements unless he is included in a list referred to in section 36(1)(a), a supplementary list under section 43D or a services list.
- (7) Regulations made by virtue of subsection (3)(e) may (but need not) make provision corresponding to anything in sections 49F to 49N below.
- (8) If the regulations provide under subsection (3)(e) or (4) that a [<sup>F230</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority may suspend or remove a person from a services list, they must include provision—
- (a) requiring him to be given notice of any allegation against him;
  - (b) giving him the opportunity of putting his case at a hearing before the [<sup>F230</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority make any decision as to his suspension or removal; and
  - (c) requiring him to be given notice of the [<sup>F231</sup>decision of the Primary Care Trust or of the Health Authority] and the reasons for it and of any right of appeal under subsection (9) or (10).
- (9) If the regulations provide under subsection (3)(c) or (e) that a [<sup>F232</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority may refuse a person's application for inclusion in a services list, or remove a person from one, the regulations must provide for an appeal (by way of redetermination) to the FHSAA against the [<sup>F233</sup>decision of the Primary Care Trust or of the Health Authority] .
- (10) If the regulations make provision under subsection (4), they must provide for an appeal (by way of redetermination) by the person in question to the FHSAA against the [<sup>F234</sup>decision of the Primary Care Trust or of the Health Authority]—
- (a) to impose conditions, or any particular condition,
  - (b) to vary a condition,
  - (c) to remove him from the services list for breach of condition,
  - (d) on any review of an earlier such decision of theirs.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F218** S. 28DA inserted (1.7.2002 for W., otherwise prosp.) by 2001 c. 15, ss. 26(1), 70(2) (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)); S.I. 2002/1475, **art. 2**

**F219** Words in s. 28DA(1) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 4(3), 42(3), **Sch. 3 Pt. 2 para. 16(2)(a)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(c)**

**F220** Words in s. 28DA(3)(a)(b)(c) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 4(3), 42(3), **Sch. 3 Pt. 2 para. 16(2)(b)(i)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(c)**

**F221** Words in s. 28DA(3)(a)(b)(c) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 4(3), 42(3), **Sch. 3 Pt. 2 para. 16(2)(b)(i)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(c)**

**F222** Words in s. 28DA(3)(a)(b)(c) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 4(3), 42(3), **Sch. 3 Pt. 2 para. 16(2)(b)(i)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(c)**

**Status:** Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- F223** Words in s. 28DA(3)(e) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 4(3), 42(3), **Sch. 3 Pt. 2 para. 16(2)(b)(i)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(c)**
- F224** Words in s. 28DA(3)(g) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 4(3), 42(3), **Sch. 3 Pt. 2 para. 16(2)(b)(i)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(c)**
- F225** Words in s. 28DA(3)(j) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 4(3), 42(3), **Sch. 3 Pt. 2 para. 16(2)(b)(ii)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(c)**
- F226** Words in s. 28DA(3)(k) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 4(3), 42(3), **Sch. 3 Pt. 2 para. 16(2)(b)(i)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(c)**
- F227** Words in s. 28DA(4)(a)(b)(d) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 4(3), 42(3), **Sch. 3 Pt. 2 para. 16(2)(c)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(c)**
- F228** Words in s. 28DA(4)(a)(b)(d) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 4(3), 42(3), **Sch. 3 Pt. 2 para. 16(2)(c)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(c)**
- F229** Words in s. 28DA(4)(a)(b)(d) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 4(3), 42(3), **Sch. 3 Pt. 2 para. 16(2)(c)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(c)**
- F230** Words in s. 28DA(8) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 4(3), 42(3), **Sch. 3 Pt. 2 para. 16(2)(d)(i)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(c)**
- F231** Words in s. 28DA(8)(c) substituted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 4(3), 42(3), **Sch. 3 Pt. 2 para. 16(2)(d)(ii)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(c)**
- F232** Words in s. 28DA(9) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 4(3), 42(3), **Sch. 3 Pt. 2 para. 16(2)(e)(i)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(c)**
- F233** Words in s. 28DA(9) substituted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 4(3), 42(3), **Sch. 3 Pt. 2 para. 16(2)(e)(ii)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(c)**
- F234** Words in s. 28DA(10) substituted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 4(3), 42(3), **Sch. 3 Pt. 2 para. 16(2)(f)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(c)**

PROSPECTIVE

**[<sup>F235</sup>28E Personal medical or dental services: regulations.**

- (1) The Secretary of State may make regulations with respect to the provision of services in accordance with section 28C arrangements.
- (2) The regulations must—
  - (a) include provision for participants other than [<sup>F236</sup>Strategic Health Authorities and] Health Authorities to withdraw from section 28C arrangements if they wish to do so;
  - (b) impose conditions (including conditions as to qualifications and experience) to be satisfied by medical practitioners performing personal medical services, and dental practitioners performing personal dental services, in accordance with section 28C arrangements.

In paragraph (b) “practitioner” does not include a practitioner who is undergoing training of a prescribed description.

- (3) The regulations may, in particular—

*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) provide that section 28C arrangements may be made only in prescribed circumstances;
- (b) provide that section 28C arrangements may be made only in prescribed areas;
- (c) provide that only prescribed services, or prescribed categories of service, may be provided in accordance with section 28C arrangements;
- (d) require details of section 28C arrangements to be published;
- (e) make provision with respect to the variation and termination of section 28C arrangements;
- (f) prevent (except in such circumstances and to such extent as may be prescribed) a medical practitioner who performs personal medical services in accordance with section 28C arrangements from providing general medical services;
- (g) make provision with respect to medical lists, including provision for preferential treatment for medical practitioners;
- (h) provide for parties to section 28C arrangements to be treated, in such circumstances and to such extent as may be prescribed, as health service bodies for the purposes of section 4 of the <sup>M22</sup>National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990;
- (i) provide for directions, as to payments, made under section 4(7) of the Act of 1990 (as it has effect as a result of regulations made by virtue of paragraph (h)) to be enforceable in a county court (if the court so orders) as if they were judgments or orders of that court;
- (j) confer powers or impose duties on the Dental Practice Board in relation to agreements made by virtue of section 28C(1) under which personal dental services are provided;
- (k) authorise [<sup>F237</sup>Strategic Health Authorities and] Health Authorities to make payments of financial assistance for prescribed categories of preparatory work undertaken—
  - (i) in connection with preparing proposals for section 28C arrangements; or
  - (ii) in preparation for the provision of services under proposed section 28C arrangements.

[ The regulations must include provision for a medical practitioner who—

- <sup>F238</sup>(4) (a) has provided or performed personal medical services in accordance with section 28C arrangements, and
- (b) in contemplation of doing so, gave up fund-holding status,
- to be allowed to return immediately to fund-holding status on satisfying the Secretary of State that, if he were granted that status, he would be able to fulfil the conditions for the time being in force for continuing to have it.

For the purposes of this subsection “fund-holding status” has such meaning as may be prescribed.]

- (5) The Secretary of State must—
- (a) consider whether section 28C arrangements are likely to have an adverse effect on the distribution of medical practitioners providing general medical services or performing personal medical services in England or in Wales;
  - (b) if he thinks that the arrangements are likely to have that effect, consider whether it is necessary to include in the regulations provisions designed to secure that, so far as is possible, the arrangements do not have that effect; and

**Status:** Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (c) if he thinks that it is necessary, include such provisions in the regulations.
- (6) Regulations which impose conditions on persons performing personal medical services or persons performing personal dental services (whether made by virtue of subsection (2)(b) or otherwise) may, in particular, include provision of a kind that may be made by regulations under section 32.
- (7) Regulations made by virtue of subsection (3)(g) may, in particular, include provision—
- (a) requiring (except in prescribed circumstances) [<sup>F239</sup>Primary Care Trusts and] Health Authorities to remove from their medical lists persons who are performing personal medical services in accordance with section 28C arrangements or corresponding services under section 17C of the <sup>M23</sup>National Health Service (Scotland) Act 1978;
  - (b) conferring a right to transfer to a medical list on persons who have ceased to perform such services;
  - (c) that any provision in relation to medical lists made by or under any enactment is not to apply;
  - (d) as to conditions to be attached to entries in medical lists;
  - (e) conferring powers of disqualification on the [<sup>F240</sup>Family Health Services Appeal Authority constituted under section 49S].
- (8) The power to make provision under this section of the kind mentioned in subsection (3) (j) includes power—
- (a) to authorise or require the Dental Practice Board to perform on behalf of a [<sup>F241</sup>Strategic Health Authority or] Health Authority functions of a prescribed description (including functions relating to remuneration) which have been delegated to the Board by the [<sup>F242</sup>Strategic Health Authority or] Health Authority in accordance with a power conferred by the regulations;
  - (b) to provide that functions conferred by the regulations are only to be exercised by the Board in accordance with directions of the Secretary of State;
  - (c) to require information for the purpose of performing any functions conferred or imposed on the Board under this section.]

### Textual Amendments

**F235** S. 28E inserted (*prosp.*) by 1997 c. 46, ss. 22(1), 41(3)

**F236** Words in s. 28E(2)(a) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 4(3), 42(3), **Sch. 3 Pt. 1 para. 8(a)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(c)**

**F237** Words in s. 28E(3)(k) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 4(3), 42(3), **Sch. 3 Pt. 1 para. 8(b)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(c)**

**F238** S. 28E(4) repealed (1.10.1999 for E. and 1.4.2000 for W.) by 1999 c. 8, ss. 65(2), **Sch. 5**; S.I. 1999/2540, **art. 2(1)**, **Sch. 1**; S.I. 2000/1041, **art. 2(d)**, **Sch.**

**F239** Words in s. 28E(7)(a) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 4(3), 42(3), **Sch. 3 Pt. 1 para. 8(c)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(c)**

**F240** Words in s. 28E(7)(e) substituted ((E.) 1.10.2001 for specified purposes otherwise 1.12.2001 and (W.) 26.8.2002) by 2001 c. 15, ss. 27(5)(a), 70(2) (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)); S.I. 2001/3294, **art. 4(1)**, **Sch. Pt. I** (subject to **art. 4(2)**, **Sch. Pt. II**); S.I. 2002/1919, **art. 3(1)**, **Sch. Pt. II** (subject to **art. 3(2)**)

**F241** Words in s. 28E(8)(a) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 4(3), 42(3), **Sch. 3 Pt. 1 para. 8(d)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(c)**

**F242** Words in s. 28E(8)(a) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 4(3), 42(3), **Sch. 3 Pt. 1 para. 8(d)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(c)**

*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Marginal Citations

**M22** 1990 c. 19.

**M23** 1978 c. 29.

### PROSPECTIVE

### [<sup>F243</sup>28E] Delegation of Health Authority functions relating to section 28C arrangements.

- (1) <sup>F244</sup> .....
- (2) The Secretary of State may by order make provision for any rights and liabilities arising under an agreement to provide personal medical services under section 28C above to be transferred from [<sup>F245</sup>Strategic Health Authorities] to Primary Care Trusts and from Primary Care Trusts to [<sup>F246</sup>Strategic Health Authorities] .
- (3) Subsection (2) above is without prejudice to any other power of the Secretary of State to transfer rights and liabilities under this Act.]

### Textual Amendments

**F243** S. 28EE inserted (*prosp.*) by 1999 c. 8, ss. 6(2), 67(2)

**F244** S. 28EE(1) repealed (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 4(3), 42(3), **Sch. 3 Pt. 2 para. 14(a)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(c)**

**F245** Words in s. 28EE(2) substituted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 4(3), 42(3), **Sch. 3 Pt. 2 para. 14(b)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(c)**

**F246** Words in s. 28EE(2) substituted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 4(3), 42(3), **Sch. 3 Pt. 2 para. 14(b)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(c)**

### [<sup>F247</sup>28F] Right to choose medical practitioner.

- (1) Provision shall be made in regulations for conferring a right on any person to choose the medical practitioner from whom he is to receive primary medical services, subject to—
  - (a) the consent of the practitioner concerned; and
  - (b) any limit on the number of patients to be accepted by any practitioner.
- (2) In particular, the regulations—
  - (a) shall prescribe the procedure for choosing a practitioner;
  - (b) may prescribe a limit on the number of patients to be accepted by a medical practitioner who undertakes to provide general medical services under Part II; and
  - (c) shall provide for the distribution among medical practitioners of persons who have indicated a wish to obtain primary medical services but—
    - (i) have been refused by the medical practitioner of their choice; or
    - (ii) have not chosen a medical practitioner.
- (3) The Secretary of State may give directions imposing a limit on the number of patients to be accepted by a medical practitioner who performs personal medical services in accordance with section 28C arrangements.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (4) Any such directions may make different provision for different cases or descriptions of case.
- (5) Regulations under this section may also provide that the right to choose a medical practitioner conferred by the regulations shall, in the case of such persons as may be specified in the regulations, be exercised on their behalf by other persons so specified.
- (6) In this section “primary medical services” means medical services which are—
  - (a) provided, in accordance with section 28C arrangements, as personal medical services; or
  - (b) provided under Part II as general medical services.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F247** S. 28F inserted (1.4.1998) by 1997 c. 46, s. 23(1); S.I. 1997/631, art. 2(1)(a), Sch. 1 (subject to arts. 3-5)

#### [<sup>F248</sup>28G Right to choose dental practitioner.

- (1) Provision shall be made in regulations for conferring a right on any person to choose the dental practitioner from whom he is to receive primary dental services, subject to the consent of the practitioner concerned.
- (2) The regulations shall, in particular, prescribe the procedure for choosing a practitioner.
- (3) The regulations may, in particular, provide that the right to choose a dental practitioner conferred by the regulations shall, in the case of such persons as may be specified in the regulations, be exercised on their behalf by other persons so specified.
- (4) In this section “primary dental services” means dental services which are—
  - (a) provided, in accordance with section 28C arrangements, as personal dental services; or
  - (b) provided under Part II as general dental services.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F248** S. 28G inserted (1.10.1998) by 1997 c. 46, s. 24(1); S.I. 1998/1998, art. 2(2)(a), Sch. 1

#### [<sup>F249</sup>28H Immunisation.

Where the Secretary of State arranges with medical practitioners for the vaccination or immunisation of persons against disease, he shall so far as reasonably practicable give every person providing, and every medical practitioner performing, personal medical services in accordance with section 28C arrangements an opportunity to participate in the arrangements for vaccination or immunisation.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F249** S. 28H inserted (1.4.1998) by 1997 c. 46, s. 41(10), Sch. 2 Pt. I para. 6; S.I. 1998/631, art. 2(1), Schs. 1, 2 (subject to arts. 3-5)



*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## [<sup>F250</sup>28I Use of accommodation.

If the Secretary of State considers that any accommodation provided by him by virtue of this Act is suitable for use in connection with the provision of personal medical services or personal dental services in accordance with section 28C arrangements, he may make the accommodation available on such terms as he thinks fit to persons providing those services.]

### Textual Amendments

**F250** S. 28I inserted (1.4.1998) by 1997 c. 46, s. 41(10), **Sch. 2 Pt. I para. 7**; S.I. 1998/631, art. 2(1), Schs. 1, 2 (subject to arts. 3-5)

PROSPECTIVE

## [<sup>F251</sup>28J Local pharmaceutical services schemes

(1) Schedule 8A makes provision with respect to the provision of local pharmaceutical services in accordance with schemes made by [<sup>F252</sup>Primary Care Trusts and] Health Authorities.]

### Textual Amendments

**F251** S. 28J inserted (*prosp.*) by 2001 c. 15, ss. 40(1), 70(2) (with ss. 64(9), 65(4))

**F252** Words in s. 28J inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), **Sch. 2 Pt. 2 para. 78**; S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(d)

## PART II

### GENERAL MEDICAL, GENERAL DENTAL, GENERAL OPHTHALMIC, AND PHARMACEUTICAL SERVICES

### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C21** Pt. II modified by S.I. 1982/288, **Sch. 2 para. 1** Table

**C22** Pt. II restricted (1.4.1998) by 1997 c. 46, s. 12; S.I. 1998/631, art. 2(a), **Sch. 1**

**C23** Pt. II power to modify conferred (1.4.1998) by 1997 c. 46, s. 15(2)(a); S.I. 1998/631, art. 2(1)(a), **Sch. 1**

Pt. II power to apply conferred (1.4.1998) by 1997 c. 46, s. 15(2)(b); S.I. 1998/631, art. 2(1)(b), **Sch. 1**

### *General medical services*

## 29 Arrangements and regulations for general medical services.

[<sup>F253</sup>(1) It is the duty [<sup>F254</sup>of every Primary Care Trust and] of every [<sup>F255</sup>Health Authority], in accordance with regulations [<sup>F256</sup>which shall be made for the purpose], to arrange as

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

respects their [<sup>F257</sup>area] with medical practitioners to provide personal medical services for all persons in the [<sup>F257</sup>area] who wish to take advantage of the arrangements.

- (1A) The services so provided are referred to in this Act as “general medical services”.]
- (2) Regulations may provide for the definition of the personal medical services to be provided and for securing that the arrangements will be such that all persons availing themselves of those services will receive adequate personal care and attendance, and the regulations shall include provision—
- [<sup>F258</sup>(a) for the preparation and publication by each Primary Care Trust and by each Health Authority of a list of medical practitioners who undertake to provide general medical services for persons in the area of the Primary Care Trust or Health Authority;]
- <sup>F259</sup>(b) . . . . .
- <sup>F259</sup>(c) . . . . .
- (d) for the issue to patients or their personal representatives by medical practitioners providing those services of such certificates as may be prescribed being certificates reasonably required by them under or for the purposes of any enactment;
- (e) for the removal from the list of medical practitioners undertaking to provide general medical services for persons in any [<sup>F260</sup>area] of the name of any one in whose case it has been determined in such manner as may be prescribed that he has never provided, or has ceased to provide, such general medical services for persons in that [<sup>F260</sup>area].
- [<sup>F261</sup>(f) for the making of arrangements for the temporary provision of general medical services [<sup>F262</sup>in the area of a [<sup>F263</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority];
- (g) for the circumstances in which a name added to the list by virtue of subsection (6) below may be removed from it.]
- (3) Regulations under subsection (2) above may provide for the personal medical services there mentioned to include the provision of, and services connected with, any such advice, examination and treatment as are mentioned in paragraph (b) of section 5(1) above.
- [<sup>F264</sup>(4) The remuneration to be paid under the arrangements mentioned in subsection (1) above to a practitioner who provides general medical services shall not, except in special circumstances, consist wholly or mainly of a fixed salary which has no reference to the number of patients for whom he has undertaken to provide such services.]
- [<sup>F265</sup>(5) Regulations shall—
- (a) include provision for the making to a medical practitioner providing general medical services of payments in respect of qualifying services provided by a spouse or other relative of his; and
- (b) provide that the rates and conditions of payment and the qualifying services in respect of which the payments may be made shall be such as may be determined by the Secretary of State after consultation with such bodies as he may recognise as representing such medical practitioners.]
- [<sup>F266</sup>(5A) Regulations may include provision as to the making of declarations about—
- (a) financial interests;
- (b) gifts above a prescribed value; and
- (c) other benefits received.

*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (5B) Before making regulations by virtue of subsection (5A), the Secretary of State must consult such organisations as he thinks fit appearing to him to represent medical practitioners providing general medical services.]
- [<sup>F267</sup>(6) The persons with whom arrangements for the temporary provision of general medical services in [<sup>F268</sup>an area] may be made by virtue of regulations under subsection (2) above include medical practitioners who are not on the list of medical practitioners providing such services in [<sup>F269</sup>the area], and the power to prepare and publish lists of medical practitioners conferred by paragraph (a) of that subsection accordingly includes power to add the names of medical practitioners with whom such arrangements are made to the list.
- (7) Regulations may provide that this Act and any regulations made under it shall apply in relation—
- (a) to the making of arrangements for the temporary provision of general medical services; and
  - (b) to the provision of general medical services in pursuance of any such arrangements,
- subject to such modifications as may be specified in the regulations.
- (8) Where the registration of a medical practitioner in the register of medical practitioners is suspended—
- (a) by a direction of the Health Committee of the General Medical Council under [<sup>F270</sup>section 37(1) or (2) of the <sup>M24</sup>Medical Act 1983] (unfitness to practice by reason of physical or mental condition);
  - (b) by an order of that Committee under [<sup>F270</sup>section 38(1)] of that Act (order for immediate suspension); or
  - [<sup>F271</sup>(c) by an interim suspension order under section 41A of that Act,]
- the suspension shall not terminate any arrangements made with him for the provision of general medical services, but he shall not provide such services in person during the suspension.]
- [<sup>F272</sup>(9) Where the registration of a medical practitioner in the register of medical practitioners is suspended by a direction of the Committee on Professional Performance of the General Medical Council—
- (a) under section 36A of the Medical Act 1983 (professional performance),
  - (b) under section 38(1) of that Act (order for immediate suspension), or
  - (c) under rules made by virtue of paragraph 5A(3) of Schedule 4 to that Act (procedure of committees),
- the suspension shall not, except in so far as is provided by or determined in accordance with regulations under subsection (2) above, terminate any arrangements made with him for the provision of general medical services; but he shall not provide such services in person during the suspension.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F253** S. 29(1)(1A) substituted for s. 29(1) by S.I. 1985/39, **art. 7(3)(a)**

**F254** Words in s. 29(1) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), **Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 3(2)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(c)**

**F255** Words in s. 29(1) substituted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), **Sch. 1 Pt. 1 para. 18(a)(i)** (with Sch. 2 para. 6)

**Status:** Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- F256** Words in s. 29(1) inserted (*prosp.*) by 1997 c. 46, s. 41(3)(11), **Sch. 2 Pt. II para. 71(2)**
- F257** Words in s. 29(1) substituted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), **Sch. 1 Pt. I para. 18(a)(ii)** (with Sch. 2 para. 6)
- F258** 29(2)(a) substituted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), **Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 3(3)(a)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(c)**
- F259** S. 29(2)(b)(c) repealed (1.4.1998) by 1997 c. 46, 41(10)(12), Sch. 2 Pt. I para. 8, Sch. 3 Pt. I; S.I. 1998/631, art. 2(1)(a), **Sch. 1**
- F260** Words in s. 29(2)(e) substituted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), **Sch. 1 Pt. I para. 18(b)(i)** (with Sch. 2 para. 6)
- F261** S. 29(2)(f)(g) added by Health and Social Security Adjudications Act 1983 (c. 41, SIF 113:3), s. 14, **Sch. 6 para. 2(1)**
- F262** Words in s. 29(2)(f) substituted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), **Sch. 1 Pt. I para. 18(b)(ii)** (with Sch. 2 para. 6)
- F263** Words in s. 29(2)(f) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), **Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 3(3)(b)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(c)**
- F264** S. 29(4) ceased to have effect (*prosp.*) by virtue of National Health Service Act 1966 (c. 8, SIF 113:2), **s. 10(3)**, (as substituted (29.8.1977) by Sch. 15 para. 37(b) of this Act)  
S. 29(4) repealed (14.12.2001 for E. (except for certain purposes) and otherwise *prosp.*) by 2001 c. 15, ss. 17, 67(2), 70(2), **Sch. 6 Pt. 1** (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)); S.I. 2001/3738, art. 2(3), **Sch. 1 Pt. III**
- F265** S. 29(5) added by Health Services Act 1980 (c. 53, SIF 113:2), **s. 7**
- F266** S. 29(5A)(5B) inserted (1.7.2002 for W., otherwise *prosp.*) by 2001 c. 15, **ss. 23(2)**, 70(2) (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)); S.I. 2002/1475, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1 Pt. 1**
- F267** S. 29(6)–(8) inserted by Health and Social Security Adjudications Act 1983 (c. 41, SIF 113:3), s. 14, **Sch. 6 para. 2(2)**
- F268** Words in s. 29(6) substituted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), **Sch. 1 Pt. I para. 18(c)(i)** (with Sch. 2 para. 6)
- F269** Words in s. 29(6) substituted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), **Sch. 1 Pt. I para. 18(c)(ii)** (with Sch. 2 para. 6)
- F270** Words substituted by Medical Act 1983 (c. 54, SIF 83:1), s. 56(1), **Sch. 5 para. 16(a)**
- F271** S. 29(8)(c) substituted (10.10.2002 for W. and 1.1.2003 for E.) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 37(1), 42(3), **Sch. 8 para. 2**; S.I. 2002/2532, **art. 2**, Sch.; S.I. 2002/3190, **art. 2(2)(c)**
- F272** S. 29(9) added (1.7.1997) by 1995 c. 51, s. 4, **Sch. para. 28(b)**; S.I. 1997/1315, **art. 2**

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C24** S. 29 extended by Health and Medicines Act 1988 (c. 49, SIF 113:2), **s. 17(1)**
- C25** S. 29 restricted (28.11.1997) by 1997 c. 46, **s. 1(5)(a)**; S.I. 1997/2620, **art. 2(2)(a)**
- C26** S. 29(1) modified (*prosp.*) by 1997 c. 46, s. 41(3)(11), **Sch. 2 Pt. II para. 79**
- C27** S. 29(4) modified by S.I. 1974/160, **reg. 19(16)(a)** (as substituted by S.I. 1985/1053, **reg. 3(5)**)
- C28** S. 29(4) continued (*prosp.*) by 1997 c. 46, s. 41(3)(11), **Sch. 2 Pt. II para. 71(4)**  
S. 29(4) continued (1.10.1999 for S. and otherwise *prosp.*) by 1999 c. 8, ss. 65, 67, **Sch. 4 para. 2**;  
S.S.I. 1999/90, **art. 2(b)**

#### Marginal Citations

- M24** 1983 c. 54(83:1).

#### [<sup>F273</sup>29A Medical lists.

- [<sup>F274</sup>(1) A Primary Care Trust or Health Authority may not, under section 29, arrange with a medical practitioner for him to provide general medical services for persons in the area of the Trust or Authority unless his name is included in the medical list of the Trust or Authority.]

*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (2) A medical practitioner is entitled to be included in [<sup>F275</sup>the medical list of a Primary Care Trust or Health Authority] only if—
- (a) he is eligible for inclusion in the list; and
  - (b) he is nominated or approved, in accordance with regulations under section 29B, for appointment to fill a vacancy which relates (whether wholly or in part) to the area of the [<sup>F276</sup>Trust or] Authority.
- (3) [<sup>F277</sup>Subject to any provision made under section 43C] a medical practitioner is eligible for inclusion in a medical list if—
- (a) he has not attained the age specified in regulations under section 8 of the <sup>M25</sup>Health and Medicines Act 1988 (retirement age for practitioners); and
  - [<sup>F278</sup>(b) he is not disqualified from inclusion in [<sup>F279</sup>the medical lists of all Primary Care Trusts and Health Authorities] by virtue of a national disqualification imposed on him by the FHSAA.]
- (4) Regulations may make provision in relation to delaying a person’s inclusion in a medical list in prescribed circumstances.
- [ Regulations may make provision in relation to the supply to a [<sup>F281</sup>Primary Care Trust <sup>F280</sup>(4A) or] Health Authority, by a medical practitioner who is included in their medical list (or, as respects paragraph (a), by arrangement with him), of—
- (a) information of a prescribed description; and
  - (b) a criminal conviction certificate under section 112 of the Police Act 1997 (c. 50), a criminal record certificate under section 113 of that Act or an enhanced criminal record certificate under section 115 of that Act.]
- (5) This section is subject to section 29(6) (temporary provision of general medical services) and any provision of, or made under, an enactment relating to the right of a medical practitioner to transfer to a medical list.
- (6) In this Act “medical list”, in relation to a [<sup>F282</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority, means the list of medical practitioners undertaking to provide general medical services for persons in their area, kept by the [<sup>F283</sup>Trust or] Authority under regulations made under section 29(2)(a).]

#### Textual Amendments

- F273** S. 29A inserted (10.12.1998) by 1997 c. 46, s. 32(1); S.I. 1998/2840, art. 2(3), Sch.
- F274** S. 29A(1) substituted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), Sch. 2 para. 4(2); S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(d)
- F275** Words in s. 29A(2) substituted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), Sch. 2 para. 4(3)(a); S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(d)
- F276** Words in s. 29A(2)(b) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), Sch. 2 para. 4(3)(b); S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(d)
- F277** Words in s. 29A(3) inserted (1.4.2000) by 1999 c. 8, ss. 9(2), 67; S.I. 1999/2793, art. 2 (3)(b); S.I. 2000/1041, art. 2(a)
- F278** S. 29A(3)(b) substituted (22.11.2001 for certain purposes for E., 14.12.2001 for all other purposes (except those relating to the provision of pharmaceutical services under the 1977 Act) for E. and otherwise *prosp.*) by 2001 c. 15, ss. 67(1), 70(2), Sch. 5 Pt. 1 para. 5(4) (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)); S.I. 2001/3738, art. 2(2), Sch. 1 Pt. II
- F279** Words in s. 29A(3)(b) substituted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), Sch. 2 para. 4(4); S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(d)

**Status:** Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- F280** S. 29A(4A) inserted (22.11.2001 for certain purposes for E., 14.12.2001 for all other purposes (except those relating to the provision of pharmaceutical services under the 1977 Act) for E. and otherwise *prosp.*) by 2001 c. 15, ss. 20(2), 70(2) (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)); S.I. 2001/3738, art. 2(2), **Sch. 1 Pt. II**
- F281** Words in s. 29A(4A) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), **Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 4(5)**; S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(d)
- F282** Words in s. 29A(6) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), **Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 4(6)(a)**; S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(d)
- F283** Words in s. 29A(6) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), **Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 4(6)(b)**; S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(d)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C29** S. 29A(2)(b) excluded (1.4.1998: subject to transitional provisions) by 1997 c. 46, s. 13(9), **Sch. 1 para. 2(2)**; S.I. 1998/631, art. 2(1)(a), **Sch. 1**

#### Marginal Citations

- M25** 1988 c. 49

### [<sup>F284</sup>29B Vacancies for medical practitioners.

- (1) Regulations may make provision in relation to the filling of vacancies for medical practitioners to provide general medical services.
  - (2) The regulations may, in particular, include provision for—
    - [<sup>F285</sup>(a) the determination by a [<sup>F286</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority of whether there is, or will be, a vacancy for a medical practitioner in a locality;
    - (b) any consultation which a [<sup>F286</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority must undertake before doing so;
    - (c) the determination by [<sup>F287</sup>a [<sup>F286</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority] of conditions of practice to be imposed on any medical practitioner who fills a particular vacancy;
    - (d) the determination by a [<sup>F286</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority of whether a vacancy is to be filled by a member of a partnership or by a sole practitioner;
    - (e) the nomination by a [<sup>F286</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority of a medical practitioner for appointment to fill a vacancy as a sole practitioner;
    - (f) the approval by a [<sup>F286</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority of a medical practitioner for appointment to fill a vacancy as a member of a partnership.
- [ The regulations may also make provision in relation to—
- <sup>F288</sup>(2A) (a) grounds on which a [<sup>F286</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority may, or must, refuse to nominate or approve a medical practitioner for appointment to fill a vacancy (including grounds corresponding to the conditions referred to in section 49F(2), (3) and (4) as read with section 49H(2) below);
  - (b) information which must be supplied to a [<sup>F286</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority by a medical practitioner seeking such nomination or approval (or by arrangement with him);
  - (c) the supply to a [<sup>F286</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority by such a medical practitioner of a certificate of a kind referred to in section 29A(4A)(b) above; and
  - (d) the disclosure by a [<sup>F286</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority, to prescribed persons or persons of prescribed descriptions, of information of a prescribed



*Status:* Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

description about such medical practitioners, and refusals by the [<sup>F286</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority to nominate or approve them.]

- (3) The regulations may also make provision in relation to—
- (a) criteria to be applied in making decisions under the regulations,
    - [ grounds on which a [<sup>F290</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority may defer
    - <sup>F289</sup>(aa) a decision whether or not to nominate or approve a medical practitioner for appointment to fill a vacancy;]]
    - (b) the variation or revocation of such decisions (including appeals to the [<sup>F291</sup>FHSAA] on points of law), <sup>F292</sup> . . .
    - <sup>F293</sup>(c) vacancies relating to the area of one Primary Care Trust which also relate to the area of another Primary Care Trust, or of a Health Authority, or of a Health Board, or
    - (d) vacancies relating to the area of one Health Authority which also relate to the area of another Health Authority or of a Primary Care Trust,]

and may contain such transitional provisions as the Secretary of State considers appropriate.

<sup>F294</sup>(3A) If regulations made by virtue of subsection (2A)(a) provide that a [<sup>F295</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority may refuse to nominate or approve a medical practitioner for appointment to fill a vacancy, they must provide for an appeal (by way of redetermination) to the FHSAA against the [<sup>F296</sup>decision of the Primary Care Trust or of the Health Authority] .]

(4) Regulations which make provision about vacancies which relate partly to the area of a Health Board may, in particular, provide that section 29A(2)(b) is to have effect in prescribed circumstances as if the reference to regulations under this section were a reference to regulations under section 19B of the <sup>M26</sup>National Health Service (Scotland) Act 1978.

(5) In this section—

“conditions of practice” means conditions—

- (a) specifying, by reference to one or more prescribed conditions relating to hours or the sharing of work, the provision of general medical services for which a person is entitled to be remunerated; and
- (b) specifying the locality in which a person is entitled to provide general medical services;

“Health Board” has the same meaning as in the National Health Service (Scotland) Act 1978;

[<sup>F297</sup>“locality”, in relation to a Primary Care Trust or to a Health Authority, means the area of the Trust or of the Authority, or a particular part of their area;

“sole practitioner” means a medical practitioner providing general medical services otherwise than in partnership with one or more other medical practitioners.

(6) This section does not affect the power to make regulations under section 29.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F284** S. 29B inserted (10.12.1998) by 1997 c. 46, s. 32(1); S.I. 1998/2840, art. 2(3), Sch.

**F285** S. 29B(2)(a)(b) substituted (8.3.2002 for certain purposes and 1.4.2002 otherwise) by 2001 c. 15, ss. 15(2)(a), 70(2) (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)); S.I. 2002/1095, art. 2(2)

**Status:** Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- F286** Words in s. 29B(2)(2A) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), **Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 5(2)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(d)**
- F287** Words in s. 29B(2)(c) substituted (8.3.2002 for certain purposes and 1.4.2002 otherwise) by 2001 c. 15, ss. 15(2)(b), 70(2) (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)); S.I. 2002/1095, **art. 2(2)**
- F288** S. 29B(2A) inserted (22.11.2001 for certain purposes for E., 14.12.2001 for all other purposes (except those relating to the provision of pharmaceutical services under the 1977 Act) for E. and otherwise *prosp.*) by 2001 c. 15, **ss. 20(3)(a), 70(2)** (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)); S.I. 2001/3738, **art. 2(2), Sch. 1 Pt. II**
- F289** S. 29B(3)(aa) inserted (22.11.2001 for certain purposes for E., 14.12.2001 for all other purposes (except those relating to the provision of pharmaceutical services under the 1977 Act) for E. and otherwise *prosp.*) by 2001 c. 15, **ss. 20(3)(b), 70(2)** (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)); S.I. 2001/3738, **art. 2(2), Sch. 1 Pt. II**
- F290** Words in s. 29B(3)(aa) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), **Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 5(3)(a)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(d)**
- F291** Word in s. 29B(3)(b) substituted (8.3.2002 for certain purposes, 1.4.2002 for all other purposes for E. and otherwise *prosp.*) by 2001 c. 15, ss. 15(3), 70(2) (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)); S.I. 2002/1095, **art. 2(2)**
- F292** Word in s. 29B(3)(b) repealed (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), **Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 5(3)(b)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(d)**
- F293** S. 29B(3)(c)(d) substituted (1.10.2002) for s. 29B(3)(c) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), **Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 5(3)(c)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(d)**
- F294** S. 29B(3A) inserted (22.11.2001 for certain purposes for E., 14.12.2001 for all other purposes (except those relating to the provision of pharmaceutical services under the 1977 Act) for E. and otherwise *prosp.*) by 2001 c. 15, **ss. 20(3)(c), 70(2)** (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)); S.I. 2001/3738, **art. 2(2), Sch. 1 Pt. II**
- F295** Words in s. 29B(3A) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), **Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 5(4)(a)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(d)**
- F296** Words in s. 29B(3A) substituted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), **Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 5(4)(b)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(d)**
- F297** Definition in s. 29B(5) substituted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), **Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 5(5)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(d)**

### Marginal Citations

**M26** 1978 c. 29.

**F298**<sup>30</sup> .....

### Textual Amendments

**F298** S. 30 repealed (10.12.1998) by 1997 c. 46, s. 32(2), 41(12), **Sch. 3 Pt. I**; S.I. 1998/2840, **art. 2(3), Sch.** (with art. 3)

## 31 Requirement of suitable experience.

- [<sup>F299</sup>(1) Regulations under section 29B must secure that a medical practitioner is not nominated or approved by a [<sup>F300</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority for appointment to fill a vacancy unless he is suitably experienced.]
- (2) For the purposes of this section a medical practitioner is “suitably experienced” if, but only if, he either—
- (a) has acquired the prescribed medical experience, or

*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) is by virtue of regulations made under section 32 below exempt from the need to have acquired that experience, and “medical experience” includes hospital experience in any speciality.

#### Textual Amendments

**F299** S. 31(1) substituted (10.12.1998) by 1997 c. 46, s. 32(3); S.I. 1998/2840, art. 2(3), Sch.

**F300** Words in s. 31(1) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 6; S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(d)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C30** S. 31 applied (28.11.1997) by 1997 c. 46, s. 2(4); S.I. 1997/2620, art. 2(2)

**C31** S. 31(2) applied (1.4.1998) by 1997 c. 46, s. 11(3); S.I. 1998/631, art. 2(1)(a), Sch. 1

## 32 Regulations as to s. 31.

- (1) Regulations may for the purposes of section 31 above provide—
- (a) for prescribing the medical experience needed to satisfy paragraph (a) of section 31(2);
  - (b) as to the documents which an applicant may or must produce as evidence that he is suitably experienced or has acquired medical experience of any particular kind;
  - (c) for requiring an applicant who claims to have acquired the prescribed experience to submit particulars of his experience to a prescribed body, and for requiring that body, if satisfied that he has acquired the prescribed experience, to issue him a certificate (a “certificate of prescribed experience”) to that effect;
  - (d) for enabling an applicant without the prescribed experience who considers that the medical experience which he has acquired is, or ought to be regarded as, equivalent to the prescribed experience to submit particulars of that experience to a prescribed body, and for requiring or enabling that body, if satisfied that the applicant’s medical experience is so equivalent, to issue him a certificate (a “certificate of equivalent experience”) to that effect;
  - (e) for treating an applicant who holds a certificate of equivalent experience as satisfying paragraph (a) of section 31(2);
  - (f) as to the circumstances or conditions in or subject to which a medical practitioner is exempt from the need to have acquired the prescribed experience;
  - (g) for conferring on an applicant who is refused a certificate of prescribed experience or a certificate of equivalent experience a right of appeal to a body constituted by the Secretary of State, and for any matter for which it appears to the Secretary of State to be requisite or expedient to provide in consequence of the conferring of that right;
  - (h) for anything authorised or required by section 31 to be prescribed or otherwise provided for by regulations.

In this section—

[<sup>F301</sup>“applicant” means a medical practitioner who is seeking to be nominated or approved by a [<sup>F302</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority in accordance with regulations under section 29B for appointment to fill a vacancy;

**Status:** Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

“the prescribed experience” means the medical experience for the time being prescribed for the purposes of paragraph (a) of section 31(2).

- (2) Regulations under this section shall be framed so as to allow the prescribed experience to be acquired without undertaking whole-time employment.
- (3) Any power under this section to make regulations—
- (a) may be exercised so as to make different provision for different [<sup>F303</sup>areas] or different periods of time or in relation to different cases or different circumstances;
  - (b) includes power to make such incidental or supplemental provision in the regulations as the Secretary of State considers appropriate.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F301** Definition of “applicant” in s. 32(1) substituted (10.12.1998) by 1997 c. 46, s. 41(10), **Sch. 2 Pt. I para. 9**; S.I. 1998/2840, art. 2, **Sch.**

**F302** Words in s. 32(1) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), **Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 7**; S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(d)

**F303** Word in s. 32(3)(a) substituted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), **Sch. 1 para. 21** (with Sch. 2 para. 6)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C32** S. 32 applied (1.4.1998) by 1997 c. 46, s. 11(3); S.I. 1998/631, art. 2(1)(a), **Sch. 1** (with arts. 3-5)  
S. 32 applied (with modifications) (1.4.1998) by 1997 c. 46, s. 11(3)(4); S.I. 1998/631, art. 2(1)(a), **Sch. 1** (with arts. 3-5)

### 33 Distribution of general medical services.

<sup>F304</sup>(1) . . . . .

[<sup>F305</sup>(1A) The Secretary of State may by order specify—

- (a) the maximum number of medical practitioners with whom, in any year, all the [<sup>F306</sup>Primary Care Trusts], taken as a whole, may enter into arrangements under section 29 above for the provision of general medical services; and
- (b) the maximum number of medical practitioners with whom, in any year, all the [<sup>F307</sup>Health Authorities ]<sup>F308</sup> . . . , taken as a whole, may enter into such arrangements.

(1B) An order under subsection (1A) above may contain such incidental and consequential provisions (including provisions amending this Part of this Act [<sup>F309</sup>or any regulations made under this Part of this Act]) as appear to the Secretary of State to be appropriate  
<sup>F310</sup> . . . .]

[<sup>F311</sup>(1C) An order under subsection (1A) may, in particular, make provision as to the extent to which account is to be taken under the order of medical practitioners whose ability to carry out remunerated work is limited by virtue of conditions of practice which relate to remuneration and are determined under regulations made under section 29B.]

<sup>F312</sup>(2) . . . . .

<sup>F312</sup>(2A) . . . . .

<sup>F312</sup>(3) . . . . .

*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F312(4) .....
- F312(5) .....
- F312(6) .....
- F313(7) .....
- F312(8) .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F304** S. 33(1) repealed (10.12.1998) by 1997 c. 46, s. 41(10)(12), Sch. 2 Pt. I para. 10(2), **Sch. 3 Pt. I**; S.I. 1998/2840, arts. 2(3), **Sch.** (with art. 3)

**F305** S. 33(1A)(1B) inserted by National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990 (c. 19, SIF 113:2), **s. 23(1)**

**F306** Words in s. 33(1A)(a) substituted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), **Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 8(a)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(d)**

**F307** Words in s. 33(1A)(b) substituted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), **Sch. 1 Pt. I para. 22(b)** (with Sch. 2 para. 6)

**F308** Words in s. 33(1A)(b) repealed (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), **Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 8(a)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(d)**

**F309** Words in s. 33(1B) inserted (10.12.1998) by 1997 c. 46, **s. 41(10) Sch. 2 Pt. I para. 10(3)(a)**; S.I. 1998/2840, art. 2(3), **Sch.** (with art. 3)

**F310** Words in s. 33(1B) repealed (1.4.2002) by 2001 c. 15, ss. 67(1)(2), 70(2), Sch. 5 Pt. 1 para. 5(5), Sch. 6 Pt. 1 (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)); S.I. 2002/1095, **art. 2(3)**, Sch.

**F311** S. 33(1C) inserted (10.12.1998) by 1997 c. 46, **s. 41(10) Sch. 2 Pt. I para. 10(4)**; S.I. 1998/2840, art. 2(3), **Sch.** (with art. 3)

**F312** S. 33(2)-(6)(8) repealed (10.12.1998) by 1997 c. 46, s. 41(10)(12), Sch. 2 Pt. I para. 10(5), **Sch. 3 Pt. I**; S.I. 1998/2840, arts. 2(3), **Sch.** (with art. 3)

**F313** S. 33(7) repealed (subject to transitional provisions in S.I. 1990/2511, **art. 4(2)** ) by National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990 (c. 19, SIF 113:2), ss. 23(5), 66(2), **Sch. 10**

**34 Regulations for Medical Practices Committee.**

- F314 .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F314** S. 34 repealed (1.4.2002) by 2001 c. 15, ss. 67(1)(2), 70(2), Sch. 5 Pt. 1 para. 5(6), Sch. 6 Pt. 1 (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)); S.I. 2002/1095, **art. 2(3)**, Sch.

*General dental services*

**35 Arrangements for general dental services.**

[<sup>F315</sup>(1) It is the duty [<sup>F316</sup>of every Primary Care Trust and] of every [<sup>F317</sup>Health Authority], in accordance with regulations, to make as respects their [<sup>F318</sup>area] arrangements with dental practitioners [<sup>F319</sup>or dental corporations] under which any person in the [<sup>F318</sup>area] for whom a dental practitioner [<sup>F319</sup>or dental corporation] undertakes in accordance

**Status:** Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

with the arrangements to provide dental treatment and appliances shall receive such treatment and appliances.

- (1A) The services so provided are referred to in this Act as general dental services.]
- (2) The remuneration to be paid under such arrangements to a dental practitioner who [<sup>F320</sup>, or dental corporation which,] provides general dental services elsewhere than at a health centre shall not consist wholly or mainly of a fixed salary [<sup>F321</sup>(or, in the case of a dental corporation, a fixed rate of remuneration)] unless either—
- (a) the remuneration is paid in pursuance of arrangements made under section 56 below, or
  - (b) the services are provided in prescribed circumstances and the practitioner [<sup>F322</sup>or corporation] consents,
- and it shall be the Secretary of State's duty, before he prescribes any circumstances for the purposes of paragraph (b), to consult such organisations as appear to him to be representative of the dental profession.
- [<sup>F323</sup>(3) Where the registration of a dental practitioner in the dentists register is suspended—
- (a) by an order under [<sup>F324</sup>section 32 of the <sup>M27</sup>Dentists Act 1984] (interim suspension); or
  - (b) by a direction or [<sup>F325</sup>an order of the Health Committee under] that Act (health cases),
- the suspension shall not terminate any arrangements made with him for the provision of general dental services, but he shall not provide such services in person during the suspension.
- (4) Regulations may provide for the making of payments in consequence of suspension to a dental practitioner whose registration is so suspended.]
- [<sup>F326</sup>(5) In this Act, “dental corporation” means a body corporate which carries on the business of dentistry (within the meaning of section 40 of the Dentists Act 1984 (c. 24)).]

### Textual Amendments

- F315** S. 35(1)(1A) substituted for s. 35(1) by S.I. 1985/39, **art. 7(9)**
- F316** Words in s. 35(1) inserted (1.10.2002) by **National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17)**, ss. 2(5), 42(3), **Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 9**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(d)**
- F317** Words in s. 35(1) substituted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), **Sch. 1 Pt. 1 para. 24(a)** (with Sch. 2 para. 6)
- F318** Words in s. 35(1) substituted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), **Sch. 1 Pt. 1 para. 24(b)** (with Sch. 2 para. 6)
- F319** Words in s. 35(1) inserted (22.11.2001 for E. and 1.7.2002 for W.) by 2001 c. 15, ss. 22(2)(a)(i)(ii), 70(2) (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)); S.I. 2001/3738, **art. 2(1)**, Sch. 1 Pt. I; S.I. 2002/1475, **art. 2(1)**, Sch. Pt. 1
- F320** Words in s. 35(2) inserted (22.11.2001 for E. and 1.7.2002 for W.) by 2001 c. 15, ss. 22(2)(b)(i), 70(2) (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)); S.I. 2001/3738, **art. 2(1)**, Sch. 1 Pt. I; S.I. 2002/1475, **art. 2(1)**, Sch. Pt. 1
- F321** Words in s. 35(2) inserted (22.11.2001 for E. and 1.7.2002 for W.) by 2001 c. 15, ss. 22(2)(b)(ii), 70(2) (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)); S.I. 2001/3738, **art. 2(1)**, Sch. 1 Pt. I; S.I. 2002/1475, **art. 2(1)**, Sch. Pt. 1
- F322** Words in s. 35(2)(b) inserted (22.11.2001 for E. and 1.7.2002 for W.) by 2001 c. 15, ss. 22(2)(b)(iii), 70(2) (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)); S.I. 2001/3738, **art. 2(1)**, Sch. 1 Pt. I; S.I. 2002/1475, **art. 2(1)**, Sch. Pt. 1
- F323** S. 35(3)(4) added by **Health and Social Services and Social Security Adjudications Act 1983 (c. 41)**, SIF 113:3), **s. 15(a)**
- F324** Words substituted by **Dentists Act 1984 (c. 24)**, SIF 83:1), s. 54(1), **Sch. 5 para. 8(a)**
- F325** Words substituted by **Dentists Act 1984 (c. 24)**, SIF 83:1), s. 54(1), **Sch. 5 para. 8(b)**



*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**F326** S. 35(5) inserted (22.11.2001 for E. and 1.7.2002 for W.) by 2001 c. 15, ss. 22(2)(c), 70(2) (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)); S.I. 2001/3738, art. 2(1), Sch. 1 Pt. I; S.I. 2002/1475, art. 2(1), Sch. Pt. 1

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C33** S. 35 restricted (28.11.1997) by 1997 c. 46, s. 1(5)(b); S.I. 1997/2620, art. 2(2)

**C34** S. 35(1) modified (*prosp.*) by 1997 c. 46, ss. 41(3)(11) Sch. 2 Pt. II para. 79

**Marginal Citations**

**M27** 1984 c. 24(83:1).

**36 Regulations as to s. 35.**

[<sup>F327</sup>(1)] Regulations may provide as to the arrangements to be made under section 35 above, and shall include provision—

- [<sup>F328</sup>(a)] for the preparation and publication by each Primary Care Trust and by each Health Authority of a list of dental practitioners and dental corporations who undertake to provide general dental services for persons in the area of the Primary Care Trust or Health Authority;
- (b) for conferring a right, subject to [<sup>F329</sup>[<sup>F330</sup>subsections [<sup>F331</sup>(2) to (7)]]below [<sup>F332</sup>to any provision made under section 43C below] and to] the provisions of this Part of this Act relating to the disqualification of practitioners [<sup>F333</sup>and to section 8 of the Health and Medicines Act 1988 and regulations under that section], on any dental practitioner [<sup>F334</sup>or dental corporation], who wishes to be included in any such list, to be so included;
- [<sup>F335</sup>(c)] .....
- (d) for the removal from the list of dental practitioners [<sup>F336</sup>and dental corporations] undertaking to provide general dental services for persons in any [<sup>F337</sup>area] of the name of any one in whose case it has been determined in such manner as may be prescribed that he has never provided, or has ceased to provide, such general dental services for persons in that [<sup>F337</sup>area].

[<sup>F338</sup>(1A)] The regulations may include provision as to—

- (a) information which must be supplied to a [<sup>F339</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority by, or by arrangement with, a dental practitioner or dental corporation included or seeking inclusion in a list referred to in subsection (1) (a); and
- (b) the supply to a [<sup>F339</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority—
  - (i) by a dental practitioner who is included, or seeking inclusion, in such a list, or
  - (ii) by a director of a dental corporation included, or seeking inclusion, in such a list,

of a criminal conviction certificate under section 112 of the Police Act 1997 (c. 50), a criminal record certificate under section 113 of that Act or an enhanced criminal record certificate under section 115 of that Act.]

[<sup>F340</sup>(1B)] The regulations may include provision as to the making of declarations about—

- (a) financial interests;
- (b) gifts above a prescribed value; and
- (c) other benefits received.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

(1C) Before making regulations by virtue of subsection (1B), the Secretary of State must consult such organisations as he thinks fit appearing to him to represent dental practitioners and dental corporations providing general dental services.]

[<sup>F341</sup>(2) No dental practitioner who is a national of a member State and is registered by virtue of a qualification granted in a member State shall be entitled to have his name included in the list kept by any [<sup>F342</sup>Primary Care Trust or][<sup>F343</sup>Health Authority] unless he satisfies [<sup>F343</sup>the [<sup>F342</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority] that he has that knowledge of English which, in the interests of himself and his patients, is necessary for the provision of general dental services in the [<sup>F344</sup>area of the Primary Care Trust or Health Authority] .]

[<sup>F345</sup>(3) Regulations may make the exercise of the right conferred by virtue of paragraph (b) of subsection (1) above subject to any provision made by or under the regulations, and, in such cases as may be prescribed, may confer a right of appeal to a prescribed body in respect of a refusal to include a dental practitioner [<sup>F334</sup>or dental corporation] on such a list as is referred to in paragraph (a) of that subsection.]

[<sup>F346</sup>(4) The provision which may be made by regulations under subsection (3) includes, in particular, provision in relation to grounds on which a [<sup>F347</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority may, or must, refuse to include a dental practitioner or a dental corporation in a list referred to in subsection (1)(a) (including grounds corresponding to the conditions referred to in section 49F(2), (3) and (4) as read with section 49H below).

(5) Those regulations may make provision in relation to criteria to be applied in making decisions under the regulations.

(6) If those regulations provide that a [<sup>F348</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority may refuse to include a dental practitioner or dental corporation in such a list, they must also provide for an appeal (by way of redetermination) to the FHSAA against the [<sup>F349</sup>decision of the Primary Care Trust or of the Health Authority] .

(7) Regulations may provide for grounds on which a [<sup>F350</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority may defer a decision whether or not to grant an application for inclusion in a list referred to in subsection (1)(a).

(8) Regulations may make provision as to the disclosure by a [<sup>F351</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority, to prescribed persons or persons of prescribed descriptions, of information of a prescribed description about dental practitioners and dental corporations seeking inclusion in such a list, and refusals by the [<sup>F352</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority to include them.]

### Textual Amendments

**F327** S. 36 renumbered s. 36(1) by Health and Social Security Act 1984 (c. 48, SIF 113:1), s. 5(4), **Sch. 3 para. 5(1)**

**F328** S. 36(1)(a) substituted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), **Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 10(2)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(d)**

**F329** Words inserted by S.I. 1981/432, **art. 3(3)(a)**

**F330** Words substituted by National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990 (c. 19, SIF 113:2), **s. 24(2)**

**F331** Words in s. 36(1)(b) substituted (22.11.2001 for certain purposes for E., 14.12.2001 for all other purposes (except those relating to the provision of pharmaceutical services under the 1977 Act) for E.

*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- and 1.7.2002 for W.) by 2001 c. 15, ss. 20(4)(a), 70(2) (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)); S.I. 2001/3738, art. 2(2), Sch. 1 Pt. II; S.I. 2002/1475, **art. 2(1)**, Sch. Pt. 1
- F332** Words in s. 36(1)(b) inserted (1.4.2000) by 1999 c. 8, **s. 9(3)**, 67; S.I. 1999/2793, **art. 2(3)(b)**; S.I. 2000/1041, **art. 2(a)**
- F333** Words inserted by Health and Medicines Act 1988 (c. 49, SIF 113:2), s. 25(1), **Sch. 2 para. 4**
- F334** Words in s. 36(1)(b) inserted (22.11.2001 for E. and 1.7.2002 for W.) by 2001 c. 15, ss. 22(3)(b)(d), 70(2) (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)); S.I. 2001/3738, art. 2(1), Sch. 1 Pt. I; S.I. 2002/1475, **art. 2(1)**, Sch. Pt. 1
- F335** S. 36(1)(c) repealed (1.10.1998) by 1997 c. 46, s. 41(10)(12), Sch. 2 Pt. I para. 12, **Sch. 3 Pt. 1**; S.I. 1998/1998, art. 2(2)(a)(b), **Schs. 1 2**
- F336** Words in s. 36(1)(a)(d) inserted (22.11.2001 for E. and 1.7.2002 for W.) by 2001 c. 15, ss. 22(3)(a)(c), 70(2) (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)); S.I. 2001/3738, art. 2(1), Sch. 1 Pt. I; S.I. 2002/1475, **art. 2(1)**, Sch. Pt. 1
- F337** Words in s. 36(1)(d) substituted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), **Sch. 1 Pt. 1 para. 25(a)**
- F338** S. 36(1A) inserted (22.11.2001 for certain purposes for E., 14.12.2001 for all other purposes (except those relating to the provision of pharmaceutical services under the 1977 Act) for E. and 1.7.2002 for W.) by 2001 c. 15, ss. 20(4)(b), 70(2) (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)); S.I. 2001/3738, art. 2(2), Sch. 1 Pt. II; S.I. 2002/1475, **art. 2(1)**, Sch. Pt. 1
- F339** Words in s. 36(1A) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), **Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 10(3)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(d)**
- F340** S. 36(1B)(1C) inserted (1.7.2002 for W., otherwise prosp.) by 2001 c. 15, ss. 23(3), 70(2) (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)); S.I. 2002/1475, **art. 2(1)** Sch. Pt. 1
- F341** S. 36(2) added by Health and Social Security Act 1984 (c. 48, SIF 113:1), s. 5(4), **Sch. 3 para. 5(2)**
- F342** Words in s. 36(2) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), **Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 10(4)(a)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(d)**
- F343** Words in s. 36(2) substituted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), **Sch. 1 Pt. 1 para. 25(b)(i)(ii)(iii)** (with Sch. 2 para. 6)
- F344** Words in s. 36(2) substituted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), **Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 10(4)(b)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(d)**
- F345** S. 36(3) added by National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990 (c.19, SIF 113:2), **s. 24(3)**
- F346** S. 36(4)-(8) inserted (22.11.2001 for certain purposes for E., 14.12.2001 for all other purposes (except those relating to the provision of pharmaceutical services under the 1977 Act) for E. and 1.7.2002 for W.) by 2001 c. 15, ss. 20(4)(c), 70(2) (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)); S.I. 2001/3738, art. 2(2), Sch. 1 Pt. II; S.I. 2002/1475, **art. 2(1)** Sch. Pt. 1
- F347** Words in s. 36(4) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), **Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 10(5)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(d)**
- F348** Words in s. 36(6) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), **Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 10(6)(a)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(d)**
- F349** Words in s. 36(6) substituted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), **Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 10(6)(b)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(d)**
- F350** Words in s. 36(7) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), **Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 10(7)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(d)**
- F351** Words in s. 36(8) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), **Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 10(7)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(d)**
- F352** Words in s. 36(8) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), **Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 10(7)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(d)**

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C35** S. 36 extended by Health and Medicines Act 1988 (c. 49, SIF 113:2), **s. 17(1)**

*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### 37 Dental Estimates Board.

[<sup>F353</sup>(1)] Regulations providing as to the arrangements to be made under section 35 above shall include provision—

- (a) for constituting a Board, to be called the Dental Estimates Board, of whom the chairman and a majority of the members shall be dental practitioners, for the purpose of carrying out such duties as may be prescribed with respect to . . . <sup>F354</sup> dental treatment and appliances, and to the remuneration of dental practitioners providing general dental services;
- (b) for providing in relation to that Board for any of the matters for which, in relation to [<sup>F355</sup>a [<sup>F356</sup>Strategic Health Authority]], provision is or may be made by or under Part III of Schedule 5 to this Act.

[<sup>F357</sup>(1A)] Regulations may empower the Dental Practice Board—

- (a) to direct a dental practitioner to submit to the Board, in relation to treatment which he has carried out or contemplates carrying out or to a description of such treatment specified in the direction, such estimates and information and such radiographs, models or other items as may be prescribed; and
- (b) to direct a dental practitioner not to carry out treatment, or a description of treatment specified in the direction, without first obtaining approval of an estimate from the Board.

(1B) If regulations include any such provision as is mentioned in subsection (1A)(b) above, regulations shall confer on a dental practitioner in whose case a direction such as is mentioned in that paragraph has been given a right of appeal against the direction to a prescribed person or body, but before making regulations conferring such a right the Secretary of State shall consult such organisations as appear to him to be representative of persons providing general dental services.

(1C) Regulations may be made authorising or requiring the Dental Practice Board to carry on any such additional activity relating to the provision of general dental services as may be prescribed and, without prejudice to the generality of this subsection, to conduct or commission surveys or other research relating to the provision of such services.]

[<sup>F358</sup>(2)] In subsections (1A) and (1B), references to a dental practitioner include references to a dental corporation.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F353** S. 37 renumbered as s. 37(1) by [Health and Medicines Act 1988 \(c.49, SIF 113:2\)](#), **s. 12(2)**

**F354** Words repealed by [Health and Medicines Act 1988 \(c. 49, SIF 113:2\)](#), s. 25(2), **Sch. 3**

**F355** Words in s. 37(1)(b) substituted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), **Sch. 1 Pt. 1 para. 26** (with Sch. 2 para. 6)

**F356** Words in s. 37(1)(b) substituted (1.10.2002 ) by [National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 \(c. 17\)](#), ss. 1(3), 42(3), **Sch. 1 Pt. 1 para. 17**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(c)**

**F357** S. 37(1A)—(1C) inserted by [Health and Medicines Act 1988 \(c. 49, SIF 113:2\)](#), **s. 12(3)**

**F358** S. 37(2) inserted (22.11.2001 for E. and 1.7.2002 for W.) by 2001 c. 15, ss. 22(4), 70(2) (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)); S.I. 2001/3738, **art. 2(1)**, Sch. 1 Pt. I; S.I. 2002/1475, **art. 2(1)**, Sch. Pt. 1

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C36** S. 37 extended (1.11.1999 for E. and 9.2.2001 for W.) by 1999 c. 8, **ss. 39(2)**, 67; S.I. 1999/2793, **art. 2(1)(a)**, **Sch. 1**; S.I. 2001/270, **art. 2(a)**

*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### General ophthalmic services

#### 38 Arrangements for general ophthalmic services.

<sup>F359</sup>(1) <sup>F360</sup>It is the duty <sup>F361</sup>of every Primary Care Trust and] of every <sup>F362</sup>Health Authority], in accordance with regulations, to arrange as respects their <sup>F363</sup>area]] with medical practitioners having the prescribed qualifications, <sup>F364</sup>and ophthalmic opticians for securing the testing]]<sup>F365</sup>by them of the sight—

- (a) of a child;
- (b) of a person whose resources fall to be treated under the regulations as being less than his requirements or as being equal to his requirements; or
- (c) of a person of such other description as may be prescribed.

(2) In this section—

“child” means—

- (a) a person who is under the age of 16 years; or
- (b) a person who is under the age of 19 years and receiving qualifying full-time education; and

“qualifying full-time education” means full-time instruction at a recognised educational establishment or by other means accepted as comparable by the Secretary of State, and for the purpose of this definition—

- (a) “recognised educational establishment” means an establishment recognised by the Secretary of State as being, or as comparable to, a school, college or university; and
- (b) regulations may prescribe the circumstances in which a person is or is not to be treated as receiving full-time instruction.

(3) Regulations under this section may direct how a person’s resources and requirements are to be calculated and, without prejudice to the generality of this subsection, may direct that they shall be calculated—

- (a) by a method set out in the regulations;
- (b) by a method described by reference to a method of calculating or estimating income or capital specified in an enactment other than this section or in an instrument made under an Act of Parliament or by reference to such a method but subject to prescribed modifications;
- (c) by reference to an amount applicable for the purposes of a payment under an Act of Parliament or an instrument made under an Act of Parliament; or
- (d) by reference to the person’s being or having been entitled to payment under an Act of Parliament or an instrument made under an Act of Parliament.

(4) Descriptions of persons may be prescribed for the purposes of subsection (1) above by reference to any criterion and, without prejudice to the generality of this subsection, by reference to any of the following criteria—

- (a) their age;
- (b) the fact that a prescribed person or a prescribed body accepts them as suffering from a prescribed medical condition;
- (c) the fact that a prescribed person or a prescribed body accepts that a prescribed medical condition from which they suffer arose in prescribed circumstances;
- (d) their receipt of benefit in money or in kind under any enactment or their entitlement to receive any such benefit; and

*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (e) the receipt of any such benefit by other persons satisfying prescribed conditions or the entitlement of other persons satisfying prescribed conditions to receive such benefits.
- (5) Regulations which refer to an Act of Parliament or an instrument made under an Act of Parliament may direct that the reference is to be construed as a reference to that Act or instrument—
- (a) as it has effect at the time when the regulations are made; or
  - (b) both as it has effect at that time and as amended subsequently.
- (6) Regulations may provide that a person—
- (a) whose sight is tested by a person who provides general ophthalmic services; and
  - (b) who is shown during the testing or within a prescribed time after it to fall within subsection (1) above,
- shall be taken for the purposes of the testing to have so fallen immediately before his sight was tested; and the testing shall be treated—
- (i) for the purposes of any arrangements under this section;
  - (ii) for the purposes of remuneration in respect of the testing; and
  - (iii) for any such other purpose as may be prescribed,
- as a testing of sight under this Act.
- (7) Regulations shall define the services for the provision of which arrangements under this section are to be made and the services so defined are in this Act referred to as “general ophthalmic services”.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F359** The first paragraph of s. 38 renumbered as s. 38(1) by [Health and Medicines Act 1988 \(c. 49, SIF 113:2\)](#), [s. 13\(1\)](#)
- F360** Words substituted by [S.I. 1985/39, art. 7\(11\)](#)
- F361** Words in s. 38(1) inserted (1.10.2002) by [National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 \(c. 17\)](#), [ss. 2\(5\), 42\(3\)](#), [Sch. 1 Pt. 1 para. 17](#); [S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3\(1\)\(d\)](#)
- F362** Words in s. 38(1) substituted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by [1995 c. 17, ss. 2\(1\)\(3\), 8\(1\)](#), [Sch. 1 Pt. I para. 27\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 2 paras. 6, 16](#))
- F363** Words in s. 38(1) substituted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by [1995 c. 17, ss. 2\(1\)\(3\), 8\(1\)](#), [Sch. 1 Pt. I para. 27\(b\)](#) (with [Sch. 2 paras. 6, 16](#))
- F364** Words substituted by [Health and Social Security Act 1984 \(c. 48, SIF 113:1\)](#), [s. 1\(3\)](#)
- F365** [S. 38\(1\)\(a\)-\(7\)](#) and the words “by them of the sight—” substituted by [Health and Medicines Act 1988 \(c. 49, SIF 113:2\)](#), [s. 13\(1\)](#)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C37** [S. 38\(1\)](#) modified (*prosp.*) by [1997 c. 46, s. 41\(3\)\(11\)](#), [Sch. 2 Pt. II para. 79](#)

### 39 Regulations as to s. 38.

- [<sup>F366</sup>(1)] Regulations may provide as to the arrangements to be made under section 38 above, and shall include provision—
- [<sup>F367</sup>(a) for the preparation and publication by each Primary Care Trust and by each Health Authority of a list of medical practitioners and a list of ophthalmic



*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

opticians who undertake to provide general ophthalmic services for persons in the area of the Primary Care Trust or Health Authority;]

- (b) for conferring a right, subject [<sup>F368</sup>to [<sup>F369</sup>subsections (2) and (3) below, to] any provision made under section 43C below and] to the provisions of this [<sup>F370</sup>Part of this] Act relating to the disqualification of practitioners, on any medical practitioner having the prescribed qualifications, [<sup>F371</sup>or ophthalmic] optician who wishes to be included in the appropriate list, to be so included;
- (c) for conferring on any person a right to choose in accordance with the prescribed procedure the medical practitioner or ophthalmic optician by whom his sight is to be tested, or from whom any prescription for the supply of optical appliances is to be obtained . . . <sup>F372</sup>;
- (d) for the removal from the list of medical practitioners, [<sup>F373</sup>or ophthalmic] opticians undertaking to provide general ophthalmic services for persons in any [<sup>F374</sup>area] of the name of any one in whose case it has been determined in such manner as may be prescribed that he has never provided, or has ceased to provide, such general ophthalmic services for persons in that [<sup>F374</sup>area].

[<sup>F375</sup>(2) The regulations may, in particular, make provision in relation to—

- (a) grounds on which a [<sup>F376</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority may, or must, refuse to include a medical practitioner or an ophthalmic optician in a list referred to in subsection (1)(a) (including grounds corresponding to the conditions referred to in section 49F(2), (3) and (4) as read with section 49H below);
- (b) information which must be supplied to a [<sup>F377</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority by a person included or seeking inclusion in such a list (or by arrangement with him);
- (c) the supply to a [<sup>F378</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority by an individual—
  - (i) who is included, or seeking inclusion, in such a list, or
  - (ii) who is a director of a body corporate or who is a member of a limited liability partnership included, or seeking inclusion, in such a list, of a criminal conviction certificate under section 112 of the Police Act 1997 (c. 50), a criminal record certificate under section 113 of that Act or an enhanced criminal record certificate under section 115 of that Act;
- (d) grounds on which a [<sup>F379</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority may defer a decision whether or not to include a person in such a list;
- (e) the disclosure by a [<sup>F380</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority, to prescribed persons or persons of prescribed descriptions, of information of a prescribed description about applicants for inclusion in such a list, and refusals by the [<sup>F380</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority to include them; and
- (f) criteria to be applied in making decisions under the regulations.

(3) If regulations made by virtue of subsection (2)(a) provide that a [<sup>F381</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority may refuse to include a person in such a list, they must also provide for an appeal (by way of redetermination) to the FHSAA against the [<sup>F382</sup>decision of the Primary Care Trust or of the Health Authority] .]

[<sup>F383</sup>(4) The regulations may include provision as to the making of declarations about—

- (a) financial interests;
- (b) gifts above a prescribed value; and
- (c) other benefits received.

*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (5) Before making regulations by virtue of subsection (4), the Secretary of State must consult such organisations as he thinks fit appearing to him to represent persons providing general ophthalmic services.]

### Textual Amendments

- F366** S. 39 renumbered as s. 39(1) (22.11.2001 for certain purposes for E., 14.12.2001 for all other purposes (except those relating to the provision of pharmaceutical services under the 1977 Act) for E. and 1.7.2002 for W.) by 2001 c. 15, ss. 20(5), 70(2) (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)); S.I. 2001/3738, art. 2(2), Sch. 1 Pt. II; S.I. 2002/1475, art. 2(1), Sch. Pt. 1
- F367** S. 39(1)(a) substituted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 12(2); S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(d)
- F368** Words in s. 39(b) inserted (1.4.2000) by 1999 c. 8, ss. 9(4), 67(1); S.I. 1999/2793, art. 2(3)(b); S.I. 2000/1041, art. 2(a)
- F369** Words in s. 39(1)(b) inserted (22.11.2001 for certain purposes for E., 14.12.2001 for all other purposes (except those relating to the provision of pharmaceutical services under the 1977 Act) for E. and 1.7.2002 for W.) by 2001 c. 15, ss. 20(5)(a), 70(2) (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)); S.I. 2001/3738, art. 2(2), Sch. 1 Pt. II; S.I. 2002/1475, art. 2(1), Sch. Pt. 1
- F370** Words inserted by Health Services Act 1980 (c. 53, SIF 113:2), Sch. 1 para. 52
- F371** Words substituted by Health and Social Security Act 1984 (c. 48, SIF 113:1), s. 1(6), Sch. 1 Pt. I para. 1(b)
- F372** Words repealed by Health and Social Security Act 1984 (c. 48, SIF 113:1), ss. 1(4), 24, Sch. 8 Pt. I
- F373** Words substituted by Health and Social Security Act 1984 (c. 48, SIF 113:1), s. 1(6), Sch. 1 Pt. I para. 1(c)
- F374** Words in s. 39(d) substituted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), Sch. 1 Pt. I para. 28 (with Sch. 2 paras. 6, 16)
- F375** S. 39(2)(3) inserted (22.11.2001 for certain purposes for E., 14.12.2001 for all other purposes (except those relating to the provision of pharmaceutical services under the 1977 Act) for E. and 1.7.2002 for W.) by 2001 c. 15, ss. 20(5)(b), 70(2) (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)); S.I. 2001/3738, art. 2(2), Sch. 1 Pt. II; S.I. 2002/1475, art. 2(1), Sch. Pt. 1
- F376** Words in s. 39(2) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 12(3); S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(d)
- F377** Words in s. 39(2) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 12(3); S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(d)
- F378** Words in s. 39(2) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 12(3); S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(d)
- F379** Words in s. 39(2) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 12(3); S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(d)
- F380** Words in s. 39(2) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 12(3); S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(d)
- F381** Words in s. 39(3) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 12(4)(a); S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(d)
- F382** Words in s. 39(3) substituted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 12(4)(b); S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(d)
- F383** S. 39(4)(5) inserted (1.7.2002 for W., otherwise prosp.) by 2001 c. 15, ss. 23(4), 70(2) (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)); S.I. 2002/1475, art. 2(1)

### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C38** S. 39 extended by Health and Medicines Act 1988 (c. 49, SIF 113:2), s. 17(1)

*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### **40 Medical practitioners with qualifications prescribed under s. 38.**

The power conferred by section 38 above (in relation to general ophthalmic services) to prescribe the qualifications to be possessed by any medical practitioner includes a power—

- (a) to prescribe a requirement that the practitioner shall show to the satisfaction of a committee recognised by the Secretary of State for the purpose that he possesses such qualifications, including qualifications as to experience, as may be mentioned in the regulations; and
- (b) to confer on a person who is dissatisfied with the determination of such a committee, a right of appeal to a committee appointed by the Secretary of State, and to provide for any matter for which it appears to the Secretary of State to be requisite or expedient to provide in consequence of the conferring of that right.

#### *Pharmaceutical services*

#### **[<sup>F384</sup>41 Arrangements for pharmaceutical services**

- (1) It is the duty [<sup>F385</sup>of every Primary Care Trust and] of every Health Authority, in accordance with regulations which shall be made for the purpose, to arrange as respects their area for the provision to persons who are in that area of—
  - (a) proper and sufficient drugs and medicines and listed appliances which are ordered for those persons by a medical practitioner in pursuance of his functions in the health service, the Scottish health service, the Northern Ireland health service or the armed forces of the Crown;
  - (b) proper and sufficient drugs and medicines which are ordered for those persons by a dental practitioner in pursuance of—
    - (i) his functions in the health service, the Scottish health service or the Northern Ireland health service (other than functions exercised in pursuance of the provision of services mentioned in paragraph (c)); or
    - (ii) his functions in the armed forces of the Crown;
  - (c) listed drugs and medicines which are ordered for those persons by a dental practitioner in pursuance of the provision of general dental services or equivalent services in the Scottish health service or the Northern Ireland health service;
  - (d) such drugs and medicines and such listed appliances as may be determined by the Secretary of State for the purposes of this paragraph which are ordered for those persons by a prescribed description of person in accordance with such conditions, if any, as may be prescribed, in pursuance of functions in the health service, the Scottish health service, the Northern Ireland health service or the armed forces of the Crown; and
  - (e) such other services as may be prescribed.
- (2) The services provided under this section are, together with additional pharmaceutical services provided in accordance with a direction under section 41A, referred to in this Act as “pharmaceutical services”.
- (3) The descriptions of persons which may be prescribed for the purposes of subsection (1) (d) are the following, or any sub-category of such a description—

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (a) persons who are registered by any board established under the Professions Supplementary to Medicine Act 1960 (c. 66);
  - (b) persons who are registered pharmacists;
  - (c) persons whose names are entered in a roll or record established by the General Dental Council by virtue of section 45 of the Dentists Act 1984 (c. 24) (dental auxiliaries);
  - (d) persons who are ophthalmic opticians;
  - (e) persons who are registered osteopaths within the meaning of the Osteopaths Act 1993 (c. 21);
  - (f) persons who are registered chiropractors within the meaning of the Chiropractors Act 1994 (c. 17);
  - (g) persons who are registered in the register of qualified nurses, midwives and health visitors maintained under section 7 of the Nurses, Midwives and Health Visitors Act 1997 (c. 24);
  - (h) persons who are registered in any register established, continued or maintained under an Order in Council under section 60(1) of the Health Act 1999 (c. 8);
  - (i) any other description of persons which appears to the Secretary of State to be a description of persons whose profession is regulated by or under a provision of, or made under, an Act of the Scottish Parliament or Northern Ireland legislation and which the Secretary of State considers it appropriate to specify.
- (4) A determination under subsection (1)(d) may—
- (a) make different provision for different cases;
  - (b) provide for the circumstances or cases in which a drug, medicine or appliance may be ordered;
  - (c) provide that persons falling within a description specified in the determination may exercise discretion in accordance with any provision made by the determination in ordering drugs, medicines and listed appliances.
- (5) The arrangements which may be made by a [<sup>F386</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority under subsection (1) include arrangements for the provision of a service by means such that the person receiving it does so otherwise than at the premises from which it is provided.
- (6) Where a person with whom a [<sup>F387</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority makes arrangements under subsection (1) wishes to provide services to persons outside the area of the [<sup>F388</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority, he may, subject to any provision made by regulations in respect of arrangements under this section, provide such services under the arrangements.
- (7) In this section—
- “armed forces of the Crown” does not include forces of a Commonwealth country or forces raised in a colony;
  - “listed” means included in a list for the time being approved by the Secretary of State for the purposes of this section; and
  - “the Scottish health service” and “the Northern Ireland health service” mean respectively the health service established in pursuance of the National Health Service (Scotland) Act 1947 (c. 27) or any service provided in pursuance of Article 4(1) of the Health and Personal Social Services (Northern Ireland) Order 1972 (S.I. 1972/1265 (N.I. 14)).]

*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Textual Amendments

- F384** S. 41 substituted (8.3.2002 for E. for specified purposes and 1.4.2002 for E. otherwise and 1.7.2002 for W.) by 2001 c. 15, ss. 42(1), 70(2) (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)); S.I. 2002/1095, **art. 2(5)**; S.I. 2002/1475, **art. 2(1)**, Sch. Pt. 1
- F385** Words in s. 41(1) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), **Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 13(2)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(d)**
- F386** Words in s. 41(5) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), **Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 13(3)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(d)**
- F387** Words in s. 41(6) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), **Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 13(3)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(d)**
- F388** Words in s. 41(6) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), **Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 13(3)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(d)**

#### [<sup>F389</sup>41A Arrangements for providing additional pharmaceutical services.

- (1) The Secretary of State may—
- (a) give directions to a [<sup>F390</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority requiring them to arrange for the provision to persons [<sup>F391</sup>within or outside their area] of additional pharmaceutical services; or
  - (b) by giving directions to a [<sup>F390</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority authorise them to arrange for such provision if they wish to do so.
- [ Directions under this section may require or authorise a [<sup>F390</sup>Primary Care Trust or]  
<sup>F392</sup>(1A) Health Authority to arrange for the provision of a service by means such that the person receiving it does so otherwise than at the premises from which it is provided (whether those premises are inside or outside the area of the [<sup>F390</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority).]
- (2) Directions under this section may make different provision in relation to different services specified in the directions.
- (3) The Secretary of State must publish any directions under this section in the Drug Tariff or in such other manner as he thinks appropriate.
- (4) In this section—
- “additional pharmaceutical services”, in relation to directions, means such services (of a kind that do not fall within section 41) as may be specified in the directions; and
- “Drug Tariff” means the Drug Tariff published under regulation 18 of the <sup>M28</sup>National Health Service (Pharmaceutical Services) Regulations 1992 or under any corresponding provision replacing, or otherwise derived from, that regulation.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F389** S. 41A inserted (15.8.1997) by 1997 c. 46, s. 27(1); S.I. 1997/1780, art. 2, **Sch.**
- F390** Words in s. 41A inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2.(5), 42(3), {Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para 14}; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(d)**
- F391** Words in s. 41A(1)(a) substituted (1.4.2002 for for E. and 1.7.2002 for W.) by 2001 c. 15, ss. 43(1)(a), 70(2) (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)); S.I. 2002/1095, s. {art. 2(6)}; S.I. 2002/1475, **art. 2(1)**, Sch. Pt. 1

**Status:** Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

**F392** S. 41A(1A) inserted (1.4.2002 for E. and 1.7.2002 for W. ) by 2001 c. 15, ss. 43(1)(b), 70(2) (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)); S.I. 2002/1095, art. 2(6); S.I. 2002/1475, art. 2(1), Sch. Pt. 1

#### Marginal Citations

**M28** S.I. 1992/662.

#### [<sup>F393</sup>41B Terms and conditions etc.

- (1) Directions under section 41A may require the [<sup>F394</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority to whom they apply, when making arrangements—
  - (a) to include, in the terms on which the arrangements are made, such terms as may be specified in the directions;
  - (b) to impose, on any person providing a service in accordance with the arrangements, such conditions as may be so specified.
- (2) The arrangements must secure that any service to which they apply is provided only by a person whose name is included in a pharmaceutical list.
- (3) Different arrangements may be made with respect to—
  - (a) the provision of the same service by the same person but in different circumstances; or
  - (b) the provision of the same service by different persons.
- (4) A [<sup>F395</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority must provide details of proposed arrangements (including the remuneration to be offered for the provision of services) to any person who asks for them.
- (5) After making any arrangements, a [<sup>F396</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority must publish, in such manner as the Secretary of State may direct, such details of the arrangements as he may direct.
- (6) In this section, “pharmaceutical list” means, subject to any provision of the directions in question, a list—
  - (a) published by the [<sup>F397</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority concerned, or by any other [<sup>F398</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority, in accordance with regulations made under section 42(2)(a) of this Act; or
  - (b) published by any body in accordance with regulations made under section 27(2)(a) of the <sup>M29</sup>National Health Service (Scotland) Act 1978 or Article 63(2A)(a) of the <sup>M30</sup>Health and Personal Social Services (Northern Ireland) Order 1972.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F393** S. 41B inserted (15.8.1997) by 1997 c. 46, s. 28(1); S.I. 1997/1780, art. 2, Sch.

**F394** Words in s. 41B inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 15; S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(d)

**F395** Words in s. 41B inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 15; S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(d)

**F396** Words in s. 41B inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 15; S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(d)

**F397** Words in s. 41B inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 15; S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(d)



*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**F398** Words in s. 41B inserted (1.10.2002) by [National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 \(c. 17\)](#), ss. 2(5), 42(3), **Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 15**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(d)**

#### Marginal Citations

**M29** 1978 c. 29.

**M30** S.I. 1972/1265 (N.I.14).

### [<sup>F399</sup>42 Regulations as to pharmaceutical services.

(1) Regulations shall provide for securing that arrangements made by a [<sup>F400</sup>[<sup>F401</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority] under section 41 above will—

- [<sup>F402</sup>(a) enable persons for whom drugs, medicines or appliances mentioned in that section are ordered as there mentioned to receive them from persons with whom such arrangements have been made; and
- (b) ensure the provision of services prescribed under subsection (1)(e) of that section by persons with whom such arrangements have been made.]

(2) The regulations shall include provision—

- (a) for the preparation and publication by [<sup>F403</sup>a [<sup>F404</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority] of one or more lists of persons, other than medical practitioners and dental practitioners, who undertake to provide pharmaceutical services from premises in the [<sup>F405</sup>area of the Primary Care Trust or Health Authority];
- (b) that an application to [<sup>F403</sup>a [<sup>F404</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority] for inclusion in such a list shall be made in the prescribed manner and shall state—
- (i) the services which the applicant will undertake to provide and, if they consist of or include the supply of appliances, which appliances he will undertake to supply; and
- (ii) the premises from which he will undertake to provide those services;
- (c) that, except in prescribed cases [<sup>F406</sup>(which may, in particular, include cases of applications for the provision only of services falling within subsection (3A) below)]—
- (i) an application for inclusion in such a list by a person not already included; and
- (ii) an application by a person already included in such a list for inclusion also in respect of services or premises other than those already listed in relation to him,

shall be granted only if the [<sup>F403</sup>[<sup>F404</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority are] satisfied, in accordance with the regulations, that it is necessary or desirable to grant it in order to secure in the neighbourhood in which the premises are located the adequate provision by persons included in the list of the services, or some of the services, specified in the application; and

- (d) for the removal of an entry in respect of premises from a list if it has been determined in the prescribed manner that the person to whom the entry relates—
- (i) has never provided from those premises; or
- (ii) has ceased to provide from them, the services, or any of the services, which he is listed as undertaken to provide from them.

(3) The regulations may include provision—

**Status:** Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) that an application to a [<sup>F407</sup>[<sup>F408</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority] may be granted in respect of some only of the services specified in it;
- (b) that an application to a [<sup>F407</sup>[<sup>F409</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority] relating to services of a prescribed description shall be granted only if it appears to the [<sup>F407</sup>[<sup>F410</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority] that the applicant has satisfied such conditions with regard to the provision of those services as may be prescribed;
- <sup>F411</sup> [ (ba) that an application to a [<sup>F407</sup>[<sup>F412</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority] by a person who qualified to have his name registered under the Pharmacy Act 1954 by virtue of section 4A of that Act (qualification by European diploma) shall not be granted unless the applicant satisfies the [<sup>F407</sup>[<sup>F413</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority] that he has the knowledge of English which, in the interests of himself and persons making use of the services to which the application relates, is necessary for the provision of pharmaceutical services in the [<sup>F407</sup>[<sup>F414</sup>area of the Primary Care Trust or Health Authority] ;]]
- (c) that the inclusion of a person in a list in pursuance of such an application may be for a fixed period;
- (d) that, where the premises from which an application states that the applicant will undertake to provide services are in an area of a prescribed description, the applicant shall not be included in the list unless his inclusion is approved by [<sup>F415</sup>reference to prescribed criteria by the [<sup>F407</sup>[<sup>F416</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority in whose area] those premises are situated; [<sup>F417</sup>and]]
- (e) that [<sup>F407</sup>that [<sup>F416</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority may give their] approval subject to conditions.
- <sup>F418</sup> [ (f) as to other grounds on which a [<sup>F419</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority may, or must, refuse to grant an application (including grounds corresponding to the conditions referred to in section 49F(2), (3) and (4) as read with section 49H below);
- (g) as to information which must be supplied to a [<sup>F416</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority by a person included, or seeking inclusion, in such a list (or by arrangement with him);
- (h) for the supply to a [<sup>F420</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority by an individual—
- (i) who is included, or seeking inclusion, in such a list, or
- (ii) who is a member of the body of persons controlling a body corporate included, or seeking inclusion, in such a list,
- of a criminal conviction certificate under section 112 of the Police Act 1997 (c. 50), a criminal record certificate under section 113 of that Act or an enhanced criminal record certificate under section 115 of that Act;
- (i) for grounds on which a [<sup>F416</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority may defer a decision whether or not to grant an application;
- (j) for the disclosure by a [<sup>F416</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority, to prescribed persons or persons of prescribed descriptions, of information of a prescribed description about applicants for inclusion in such a list, and refusals by the [<sup>F416</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority to grant such applications;
- (k) as to criteria to be applied in making decisions under the regulations (other than decisions required by virtue of paragraph (d))]
- <sup>F421</sup> [ (l) as to the making of declarations about—
- (i) financial interests;
- (ii) gifts above a prescribed value; and

*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

(iii) other benefits received.]

<sup>F422</sup> [ A service falls within this subsection if the means of providing it is such that the person (3A) receiving it does so otherwise than at the premises from which it is provided.

(3B) The regulations may, in respect of services falling within subsection (3A) above, include provision—

- (a) requiring persons to be approved for the purposes of providing such services, by the Secretary of State or such other person as may be specified in the regulations, in accordance with criteria to be specified in or determined under the regulations (whether by the Secretary of State or by another person so specified);
- (b) requiring the [<sup>F423</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority to make the grant of an application subject to prescribed conditions.]

<sup>F424</sup> [ Before making regulations by virtue of subsection (3)(l), the Secretary of State must (3C) consult such organisations as he thinks fit appearing to him to represent persons providing pharmaceutical services.]

(4) The regulations shall include provision conferring on such persons as may be prescribed rights of appeal from decisions made by virtue of this section.

<sup>F425</sup> [ If regulations made by virtue of subsection (3)(f) provide that a Health Authority (4A) may refuse to grant an application, they must also provide for an appeal (by way of redetermination) to the FHSAA against the Health Authority's decision .]

(5) The regulations shall be so framed as to preclude—

- (a) a person included in a list published under subsection (2)(a) above ;and (b) an employee of such a person; from taking part in the decision whether an application such as is mentioned in subsection (2)(c) above should be granted or an appeal against such a decision brought by virtue of subsection (4) above should be allowed.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F399** S. 42 substituted by [National Health Service \(Amendment\) Act 1986 \(c. 66, SIF 113:2\), s. 3](#)

**F400** Words in s. 42(1) substituted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), [Sch. 1 Pt. 1 para. 30\(a\)](#) (with Sch. 2 paras. 6, 16)

**F401** Words in s. 42(1) inserted (1.10.2002) by [National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 \(c. 17\), ss. 2\(5\), 42\(3\), Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 16\(2\)](#); S.I. 2002/2478, [art. 3\(1\)\(d\)](#)

**F402** S. 42(1)(a)(b) substituted for words in s. 42(1) (1.4.2002 for E. and 1.7.2002 for W.) by 2001 c. 15, ss. 43(2), 70(2) (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)); S.I. 2002/1095, [art. 2\(6\)](#); S.I. 2002/1475, [art. 2\(1\)](#), Sch. Pt. 1

**F403** Words in s. 42(2) substituted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), [Sch. 1 Pt. 1 para. 30\(b\)](#) (with Sch. 2 paras. 6, 16)

**F404** Words in s. 42(2) inserted (1.10.2002) by [National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 \(c. 17\), ss. 2\(5\), 42\(3\), Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 16\(3\)\(a\)](#); S.I. 2002/2478, [art. 3\(1\)\(d\)](#)

**F405** Words in s. 42(2)(a) substituted (1.10.2002) by [National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 \(c. 17\), ss. 2\(5\), 42\(3\), Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 16\(3\)\(b\)](#); S.I. 2002/2478, [art. 3\(1\)\(d\)](#)

**F406** Words in s. 42(2)(c) inserted (1.4.2002 for E. and 1.7.2002 for W.) by 2001 c. 15, ss. 43(3), 70(2) (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)); S.I. 2002/1095, [art. 2\(6\)](#); S.I. 2002/1475, [art. 2\(1\)](#), Sch. Pt. 1

**F407** Words in s. 42(3) substituted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), [Sch. 1 Pt. 1 para. 30\(c\)](#) (with Sch. 2 paras. 6, 16)

**F408** Words in s. 42(3) inserted (1.10.2002) by [National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 \(c. 17\), ss. 2\(5\), 42\(3\), Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 16\(4\)\(a\)](#); S.I. 2002/2478, [art. 3\(1\)\(d\)](#)

**Status:** Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- F409** Words in s. 42(3) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), **Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 16(4)(a)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(d)**
- F410** Words in s. 42(3) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), **Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 16(4)(a)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(d)**
- F411** S. 42(3)(ba) inserted by S.I. 1987/2202, **art. 4**
- F412** Words in s. 42(3) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), **Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 16(4)(a)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(d)**
- F413** Words in s. 42(3) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), **Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 16(4)(a)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(d)**
- F414** Words in s. 42(3)(ba) substituted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), **Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 16(4)(b)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(d)**
- F415** Words substituted by National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990 (c. 19, SIF 113:2), **s. 12(3)(a)**
- F416** Words in s. 42(3) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), **Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 16(4)(a)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(d)**
- F417** Word in s. 42(3)(d) repealed (1.7.2002 for W., otherwise prosp. ) by 2001 c. 15, ss. 20(6)(a), 67(2), 70(2), **Sch. 6 Pt. 1** (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)); S.I. 2002/1475, **art. 2(1)**, **Sch. Pt. 1**
- F418** S. 42(3)(f)-(k) inserted (1.7.2002 for W., otherwise prosp.) by 2001 c. 15, ss. 20(6)(b), 70(2) (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)); S.I. 2002/1475, **art. 2(1)**, **Sch. Pt. 1**
- F419** Words in s. 42(3) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), **Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 16(4)(a)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(d)**
- F420** Words in s. 42(3) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), **Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 16(4)(a)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(d)**
- F421** S. 42(3)(l) inserted (1.7.2002 for W., otherwise prosp.) by 2001 c. 15, ss. 23(5)(a), 70(2) (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)); S.I. 2002/1475, **art. 2(1)**, **Sch. Pt. 1**
- F422** S. 42(3A)(3B) inserted (1.4.2002 for E. and 1.7.2002 for W.) by 2001 c. 15, ss. 43(4), 70(2) (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)); S.I. 2002/1095, **art. 2(6)**; S.I. 2002/1475, **art. 2(1)**, **Sch. Pt. 1**
- F423** Words in s. 42(3B)(b) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), {**Sch. 2 Pt. para. 16(5)**}; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(d)**
- F424** S. 42(3C) inserted (1.7.2002 for W., otherwise prosp.) by 2001 c. 15, ss. 23(5)(b), 70(2) (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)); S.I. 2002/1475, **art. 2(1)**, **Sch. Pt. 1**
- F425** S. 42(4A) inserted (1.7.2002 for W., otherwise prosp.) by 2001 c. 15, ss. 20(6)(c), 70(2) (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)); S.I. 2002/1475, **art. 2(1)**, **Sch. Pt. 1**

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C39** S. 42 extended by Health and Medicines Act 1988 (c. 49, SIF 113:2), **s. 17(1)**

### 43 Persons authorised to provide pharmaceutical services.

- (1) No arrangements shall be made by [<sup>F426</sup>a [<sup>F427</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority] (except as may be provided by [<sup>F428</sup>or under] regulations) with a medical practitioner or dental practitioner under which he is required or agrees to provide pharmaceutical services to any person to whom he is rendering general medical services or general dental services.
- (2) No arrangements for the dispensing of medicines shall be made (except as may be provided by [<sup>F428</sup>or under] regulations) with persons other than persons who are registered pharmacists, or are persons lawfully conducting a retail pharmacy business in accordance with section 69 of the <sup>M31</sup>Medicines Act 1968 and who undertake that all medicines supplied by them under the arrangements made under this Part of this Act shall be dispensed either by or under the direct supervision of a registered pharmacist.

*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

[<sup>F429</sup>[<sup>F430</sup>(2A) Regulations shall provide for the preparation and publication by each Primary Care Trust and by each Health Authority of one or more lists of medical practitioners who undertake to provide drugs, medicines or listed appliances under arrangements with the Primary Care Trust or with the Health Authority.]

(2B) In subsection (2A) “listed” has the same meaning as in section 41.

[ The regulations may, in particular, include provision—

- <sup>F431</sup>(2BA) (a) as to grounds on which a Health Authority may, or must, refuse to grant an application for inclusion in a list of medical practitioners referred to in subsection (2A) (including grounds corresponding to the conditions referred to in section 49F(2), (3) and (4) as read with section 49H(2) below);
- (b) as to information which must be supplied to a Health Authority by a medical practitioner included, or seeking inclusion, in such a list (or by arrangement with him);
- (c) for the supply to a Health Authority by a medical practitioner who is included, or seeking inclusion, in such a list of a criminal conviction certificate under section 112 of the Police Act 1997 (c. 50), a criminal record certificate under section 113 of that Act or an enhanced criminal record certificate under section 115 of that Act;
- (d) for grounds on which a Health Authority may defer a decision whether or not to grant an application for inclusion in such a list;
- (e) for the disclosure by a Health Authority, to prescribed persons or persons of prescribed descriptions, of information of a prescribed description about applicants for inclusion in such a list, and refusals by the Health Authority to grant such applications;
- (f) as to criteria to be applied in making decisions under the regulations

(2BB) If regulations made by virtue of subsection (2BA)(a) provide that a Health Authority may refuse to grant an application for inclusion in such a list, they must also provide for an appeal (by way of redetermination) to the FHSAA against the Health Authority’s decision.]

(2C) The regulations shall include provision for the removal of an entry from a list in prescribed circumstances.]

[<sup>F432</sup>(3) No arrangements for the provision of pharmaceutical services falling within [<sup>F433</sup>section 41(1)(e)] [<sup>F434</sup>, or additional pharmaceutical services provided in accordance with a direction under section 41A,] above shall be made with persons other than those who are registered pharmacists or are of a prescribed description.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F426** Words in s. 43(1) substituted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), **Sch. 1 Pt. 1 para. 31** (with Sch. 2 paras. 6, 16)

**F427** Words in s. 43(1) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), **Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 17(2)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(d)**

**F428** Words inserted by Health Services Act 1980 (c. 53, SIF 113:2), **s. 21(2)**

**F429** S. 43(2A)-(2C) inserted (1.4.1998) by 1997 c. 46, **s. 29(1)**; S.I. 1998/631, art. 2(a), **Sch.**

**F430** S. 43(2A) substituted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), **Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 17(3)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(d)**

**F431** S. 43(2BA)(2BB) inserted (1.7.2002 for W., otherwise prosp.) by 2001 c. 15, ss. 20(7), 70(2) (with ss. 64(9), 65(4); S.I. 2002/1475, **art. 2(1)**, Sch. Pt. 1

**Status:** Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

**F432** S. 43(3) added by National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990 (c. 19, SIF 113:2), s. 66(1), **Sch. 9 para. 18(2)**

**F433** Words in s. 43(3) substituted (8.3.2002 for E. for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.2002 for E. and 1.7.2002 for W.) by 2001 c. 15, ss. 42(2), 70(2) (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)); S.I. 2002/1095, **art. 2(5)**{(6)}; S.I. 2002/1475, **art. 2(1)**, **Sch. Pt. 1**

**F434** Words in s. 43(3) inserted (15.8.1997) by 1997 c. 46, s. 41(10), **Sch. 2 Pt. I para. 14**; S.I. 1997/1780, **art. 2, Sch.**

#### Marginal Citations

**M31** 1968 c. 67(84).

### [<sup>F435</sup>43ZA] **Conditional inclusion in medical, dental, ophthalmic and pharmaceutical lists**

- (1) The Secretary of State may by regulations provide—
  - (a) that if a person is to be included in a list referred to in subsection (3), he is to be subject, while he remains included in the list, to conditions determined by the [<sup>F436</sup>Primary Care Trust or Health Authority in whose list he is included] ,
  - (b) for the [<sup>F437</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority to vary that person's terms of service for the purpose of or in connection with the imposition of any such conditions,
  - (c) for the [<sup>F438</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority to vary the conditions or impose different ones,
  - (d) for the consequences of failing to comply with a condition (including removal from the list), and
  - (e) for the review by the [<sup>F439</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority of any decision made by virtue of the regulations.
- (2) The imposition of conditions must be with a view to—
  - (a) preventing any prejudice to the efficiency of the services in question, or
  - (b) preventing any acts or omissions within section 49F(3)(a) below.
- (3) The lists in question are—
  - (a) a list of persons undertaking to provide general medical services,
  - (b) a list of persons undertaking to provide general dental services,
  - (c) a list of persons undertaking to provide general ophthalmic services,
  - (d) a list of persons undertaking to provide pharmaceutical services.
- (4) If regulations provide for a practitioner's removal from the list for breach of condition—
  - (a) the regulations may provide that he may not withdraw from the list while the [<sup>F440</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority are investigating whether there are grounds for exercising their power to remove him, or after the [<sup>F441</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority have decided to remove him but before they have given effect to that decision; and
  - (b) the regulations must include provision—
    - (i) requiring the practitioner to be given notice of any allegation against him,
    - (ii) giving him the opportunity of putting his case at a hearing before the [<sup>F442</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority make any decision as to his removal from the list, and



*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (iii) requiring him to be given notice of the [<sup>F443</sup>decision of the Primary Care Trust or of the Health Authority] and the reasons for it and of his right of appeal under subsection (5).
- (5) If regulations provide as mentioned in subsection (1), they must also provide for an appeal by the person in question to the FHSAA against the [<sup>F444</sup>decision of the Primary Care Trust or of the Health Authority]—
- (a) to impose conditions, or any particular condition,
  - (b) to vary a condition,
  - (c) to vary his terms of service,
  - (d) on any review of an earlier such decision of theirs,
  - (e) to remove him from the list for breach of condition,
- and the appeal shall be by way of redetermination of the [<sup>F445</sup>decision of the Primary Care Trust or of the Health Authority] .
- (6) The regulations may provide for any such decision not to have effect until the determination by the FHSAA of any appeal against it, and must so provide in relation to a decision referred to in subsection (5)(e).
- (7) Regulations under this section may provide for the disclosure by a [<sup>F446</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority, to prescribed persons or persons of prescribed descriptions, of information of a prescribed description about persons whose inclusion in the lists referred to in subsection (3) is subject to conditions imposed under this section, and about the removal of such persons from such lists for breach of condition.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F435** S. 43ZA inserted (22.11.2001 for E. and 1.7.2002 for W.) by 2001 c. 15, ss. 21, 70(2) (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)); S.I. 2001/3738, art. 2(1), Sch. 1 Pt. I; S.I. 2002/1475, art. 2(1), Sch. Pt. 1
- F436** Words in s. 43ZA(1)(a) substituted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 18(2)(a); S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(d)
- F437** Words in s. 43ZA(1) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 18(2)(b); S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(d)
- F438** Words in s. 43ZA(1) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 18(2)(b); S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(d)
- F439** Words in s. 43ZA(1) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 18(2)(b); S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(d)
- F440** Words in s. 43ZA(4) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 18(3)(a); S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(d)
- F441** Words in s. 43ZA(4) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 18(3)(a); S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(d)
- F442** Words in s. 43ZA(4) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 18(3)(a); S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(d)
- F443** Words in s. 43ZA(4)(b)(iii) substituted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 18(3)(b); S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(d)
- F444** Words in s. 43ZA(5) substituted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 18(4); S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(d)
- F445** Words in s. 43ZA(5) substituted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 18(4); S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(d)
- F446** Words in s. 43ZA(7) substituted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 18(5); S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(d)

**Status:** Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

## <sup>F447</sup> Indemnity cover

### Textual Amendments

**F447** S. 43C and cross-heading inserted (1.4.2000) by 1999 c. 8, ss. 9(1); S.I. 1999/2793, art. 2(3)(b); S.I. 2000/1041, art. 2(a)

### <sup>F448</sup> 43C Indemnity cover.

(1) Regulations may make provision for the purpose of securing that, in prescribed circumstances, prescribed Part II practitioners hold approved indemnity cover.

(2) The regulations may, in particular, make provision as to the consequences of a failure to hold approved indemnity cover, including provision—

- (a) for securing that a person is not to be added to any list unless he holds approved indemnity cover;
- (b) for the removal from a list prepared by a [<sup>F449</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority of a Part II practitioner who does not within a prescribed period after the making of a request by the Health Authority in the prescribed manner satisfy the [<sup>F450</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority that he holds approved indemnity cover.

(3) For the purposes of this section—

“approved body” means a person or persons approved in relation to indemnity cover of any description, after such consultation as may be prescribed, by the Secretary of State or by such other person as may be prescribed;

“approved indemnity cover” means indemnity cover made—

- (a) on prescribed terms; and
- (b) with an approved body;

“indemnity cover”, in relation to a Part II practitioner (or person who proposes to provide Part II services), means a contract of insurance or other arrangement made for the purpose of indemnifying him and any person prescribed in relation to him to any prescribed extent against any liability which—

- (a) arises out of the provision of Part II services in accordance with arrangements made by him with a [<sup>F451</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority under this Part of this Act; and
- (b) is incurred by him or any such person in respect of the death or personal injury of a person;

[<sup>F452</sup>“list” means a list of any kind mentioned in paragraphs (a) to (e) of section 49F below;]

“Part II practitioner” means a person whose name is on a list;

“Part II services” means general medical services, general dental services, general ophthalmic services or pharmaceutical services;

“personal injury” means any disease or impairment of a person’s physical or mental condition and includes the prolongation of any disease or such impairment;

and a person holds approved indemnity cover if he has entered into a contract or arrangement which constitutes approved indemnity cover.

*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (4) The regulations may provide that a person of any description who has entered into a contract or arrangement which is—
- (a) in a form identified in accordance with the regulations in relation to persons of that description; and
  - (b) made with a person or persons so identified,
- is to be treated as holding approved indemnity cover for the purposes of the regulations.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F448** S. 43C and cross-heading inserted (1.4.2000) by 1999 c. 8, ss. 9(1); S.I. 1999/2793, art. 2(3)(b); S.I. 2000/1041, art. 2(a)
- F449** Words in s. 43C inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 19; S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(d)
- F450** Words in s. 43C inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 19; S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(d)
- F451** Words in s. 43C inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 19; S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(d)
- F452** Definition of "list" in s. 43C(3) substituted (1.10.2002 for E. and 10.10.2002 for W.) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 37(1), 42(3), Sch. 8 para. 3; S.I. 2002/2478, {art, 3(2)(b)(i)}; S.I. 2002/2532, art. 2, Sch.

#### Supplementary lists

<sup>F453</sup>**43D**

- (1) The Secretary of State may make regulations providing for the preparation and publication by [<sup>F454</sup>each Primary Care Trust and] each Health Authority of one or more lists of persons approved by the [<sup>F455</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority for the purpose of assisting in the provision of general medical services, general dental services, general ophthalmic services and pharmaceutical services.
- (2) Such a list is referred to in this section as a “supplementary list”.
- (3) The regulations may, in particular, include provision as to—
  - (a) the [<sup>F456</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority to which an application for inclusion in a supplementary list is to be made,
  - (b) the procedure for applying for inclusion, including any information to be supplied to the [<sup>F456</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority (whether by the applicant or by arrangement with him),
  - (c) grounds on which the [<sup>F456</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority may, or must, refuse a person’s application for inclusion in a supplementary list (including his unsuitability for inclusion in such a list), or on which they may defer their decision on the application,
  - (d) requirements with which a person included in a supplementary list must comply (including the declaration of financial interests and of gifts and other benefits),
  - (e) grounds on which a [<sup>F456</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority may, or must, suspend or remove a person from a supplementary list, the procedure for doing so, and the consequences of doing so,
  - (f) payments to or in respect of persons who are suspended from a supplementary list (including provision for the amount of the payments, or the method of

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- calculating the amount, to be determined by the Secretary of State or by another person appointed for the purpose by the Secretary of State),
- (g) the supply to the [<sup>F456</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority by an applicant for inclusion in a supplementary list, or by a person included in one, of a criminal conviction certificate under section 112 of the Police Act 1997 (c. 50), a criminal record certificate under section 113 of that Act or an enhanced criminal record certificate under section 115 of that Act,
- (h) circumstances in which a person included in a supplementary list may not withdraw from it,
- (i) criteria to be applied in making decisions under the regulations,
- (j) appeals against decisions of [<sup>F457</sup>Primary Care Trusts and] Health Authorities under the regulations,
- (k) the disclosure by a [<sup>F456</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority, to prescribed persons or persons of prescribed descriptions, of information of a prescribed description about applicants for inclusion in a supplementary list, refusals of such applications, and suspensions and removals from that list.
- (4) The regulations may, in particular, also provide for—
- (a) a person's inclusion in a supplementary list to be subject to conditions determined by the [<sup>F458</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority,
- (b) the [<sup>F459</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority to vary the conditions or impose different ones,
- (c) the consequences of failing to comply with a condition (including removal from the list), and
- (d) the review by the [<sup>F460</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority of their decisions made by virtue of regulations under this subsection.
- (5) The imposition of such conditions must be with a view to—
- (a) preventing any prejudice to the efficiency of the services to which the supplementary list relates; or
- (b) preventing any acts or omissions of the type described in section 49F(3)(a) below.
- (6) Regulations made by virtue of subsection (3)(e) may (but need not) make provision corresponding to anything in sections 49F to 49N below.
- (7) If the regulations provide under subsection (3)(e) or (4) that a [<sup>F461</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority may suspend or remove a person from a supplementary list, they must include provision—
- (a) requiring him to be given notice of any allegation against him;
- (b) giving him the opportunity of putting his case at a hearing before the [<sup>F461</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority make any decision as to his suspension or removal; and
- (c) requiring him to be given notice of the [<sup>F462</sup>decision of the Primary Care Trust or of the Health Authority] and the reasons for it and of any right of appeal under subsection (8) or (9).
- (8) If the regulations provide under subsection (3)(c) or (e) that a [<sup>F463</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority may refuse a person's application for inclusion in a supplementary list, or remove a person from one, the regulations must provide for an appeal (by way of redetermination) to the FHSAA against the [<sup>F464</sup>decision of the Primary Care Trust or of the Health Authority] .

*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (9) If the regulations make provision under subsection (4), they must provide for an appeal (by way of redetermination) by the person in question to the FHSAA against the [F465 decision of the Primary Care Trust or of the Health Authority]—
- (a) to impose conditions, or any particular condition,
  - (b) to vary a condition,
  - (c) to remove him from the supplementary list for breach of condition,
  - (d) on any review of an earlier such decision of theirs.

- (10) Regulations may require a person (“A”) included in—

- (a) a medical list,
- (b) a list referred to in section 36(1)(a),
- (c) a list referred to in section 39(1)(a),
- (d) a list referred to in section 42(2)(a), or
- (e) a list referred to in section 43(2A),

not to employ or engage a person (“B”) to assist him in the provision of the relevant service unless B is included in a list referred to in paragraphs (a) to (e), a supplementary list, a services list referred to in section 28DA above or section 8ZA of the National Health Service (Primary Care) Act 1997 (c. 46) or a list corresponding to a services list prepared by a [F466 Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority by virtue of regulations made under section 41 of the Health and Social Care Act 2001 (or, in any of those cases, such a list of a prescribed description).

- (11) If regulations do so require, they—

- (a) need not require both A and B to be included in lists prepared [F467 by the same Primary Care Trust or] by the same Health Authority, but
- (b) may, in particular, require that both A and B be included in lists prepared by [F468 Primary Care Trusts] , or in lists prepared by [F469 Health Authorities] .]]

#### Textual Amendments

- F453** S. 43D inserted (22.11.2001 for E. and 1.7.2002 for W.) by 2001 c. 15, ss. 24, 70(2) (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)); S.I. 2001/3738, art. 2(1), Sch. 1 Pt. I; S.I. 2002/1475, art. 2(1) Sch. Pt. 1
- F454** Words in s. 43D(1) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 20(2)(a); S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(d)
- F455** Words in s. 43D(1) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 20(2)(b); S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(d)
- F456** Words in s. 43D(3) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 20(3)(a); S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(d)
- F457** Words in s. 43D(3)(j) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 20(3)(b); S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(d)
- F458** Words in s. 43D(4) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 20(4); S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(d)
- F459** Words in s. 43D(4) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 20(4); S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(d)
- F460** Words in s. 43D(4) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 20(4); S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(d)
- F461** Words in s. 43D(7) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 20(5)(a); S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(d)
- F462** Words in s. 43D(7) substituted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 20(5)(b); S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(d)

**Status:** Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- F463** Words in s. 43D(8) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), **Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 20(6)(a)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(d)**
- F464** Words in s. 43D(8) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), **Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 20(6)(b)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(d)**
- F465** Words in s. 43D(9) substituted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), **Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 20(7)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(d)**
- F466** Words in s. 43D(10) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), **Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 20(8)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(d)**
- F467** Words in s. 43D(11)(a) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17) ss. 2(5), 42(3), {Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 20(9)(a)}; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(d)**
- F468** Words in s. 43D(11)(b) substituted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17) ss. 2(5), 42(3), {Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 20(9)(b)(i)}; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(d)**
- F469** Words in s. 43D(11)(b) substituted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17) ss. 2(5), 42(3), {Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 20(9)(b)(ii)}; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(d)**

### *Local representative committees*

#### **44 Recognition of local representative committees.**

[<sup>F470</sup>(ZA1) A Primary Care Trust may recognise a committee formed for its area, or for the area of that and one or more other Primary Care Trusts, which it is satisfied is representative of—

- (a) the medical practitioners providing general medical services or general ophthalmic services in the Primary Care Trust's area;
- (b) those medical practitioners and the deputy medical practitioners for the Primary Care Trust's area;
- (c) the medical practitioners mentioned in—
  - (i) paragraph (a) above; or
  - (ii) paragraph (b) above,

and the section 28C medical practitioners for the Primary Care Trust's area,

and any committee so recognised shall be called the Local Medical Committee for the Primary Care Trust's area.]

[<sup>F471</sup>(A1) A Health Authority may recognise a committee formed for their area which they are satisfied is representative of—

- (a) the medical practitioners providing general medical services or general ophthalmic services in that area;
  - (b) those medical practitioners and the deputy medical practitioners for that area; or
  - (c) the medical practitioners mentioned in—
    - (i) paragraph (a) above; or
    - (ii) paragraph (b) above,
- and the section 28C medical practitioners for that area,

and any committee so recognised shall be called the Local Medical Committee for the area.



*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

[ A Primary Care Trust may recognise a committee formed for its area, or for the area of  
<sup>F472</sup>(A2) that and one or more other Primary Care Trusts, which it is satisfied is representative  
 of—

- (a) the dental practitioners providing general dental services in the Primary Care Trust's area;
- (b) those dental practitioners and the deputy dental practitioners for the Primary Care Trust's area;
- (c) the dental practitioners mentioned in—
  - (i) paragraph (a) above; or
  - (ii) paragraph (b) above,
 and the section 28C dental practitioners for the Primary Care Trust's area,

and any committee so recognised shall be called the Local Dental Committee for the Primary Care Trust's area.]

(B1) A Health Authority may recognise a committee formed for their area which they are satisfied is representative of—

- (a) the dental practitioners providing general dental services in that area;
- (b) those dental practitioners and the deputy dental practitioners for that area; or
- (c) the dental practitioners mentioned in—
  - (i) paragraph (a) above; or
  - (ii) paragraph (b) above,
 and the section 28C dental practitioners for that area,

and any committee so recognised shall be called the Local Dental Committee for the area.]

[<sup>F473</sup>(B2) Where a Primary Care Trust is satisfied that a committee formed for its area, or for its area together with the area of one or more other Primary Care Trusts, is representative—

- (a) of the ophthalmic opticians providing general ophthalmic services in the Primary Care Trust's area; or
- (b) of the persons providing pharmaceutical services from premises in the Primary Care Trust's area,

the Primary Care Trust may recognise that committee; and any committee so recognised shall be called the Local Optical Committee or the Local Pharmaceutical Committee, as the case may be, for the area of the Primary Care Trust.]

(1) Where [<sup>F474</sup>a [<sup>F475</sup>Health Authority are satisfied] that a committee formed for [<sup>F475</sup>their area] is representative]—

- [<sup>F476</sup>(a) . . . . .]
- (b) . . . . .]
- (c) of the ophthalmic opticians . . . <sup>F477</sup> providing general ophthalmic services in that [<sup>F475</sup>area], or
- (d) of the persons providing pharmaceutical services [<sup>F478</sup>from premises] in that [<sup>F475</sup>area],

[<sup>F479</sup>the Family Health Services Authority] may recognise that committee; and any committee so recognised shall be called <sup>F480</sup> . . . the Local Optical Committee or the Local Pharmaceutical Committee, as the case may be, for the [<sup>F475</sup>area] concerned.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

(2) Any such committee may <sup>F481</sup> . . . delegate any of their functions, with or without restrictions or conditions, to sub-committees composed of members of that committee.

<sup>F482</sup>(3) For the purposes of this section and section 45 below, a person who meets the condition in subsection (4) below—

(a) is a deputy medical practitioner for the area of a [<sup>F483</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority if he is a medical practitioner who assists a medical practitioner providing general medical services in that area in the provision of those services but is not himself on a [<sup>F484</sup>medical list];

<sup>F485</sup>(aa) is a section 28C medical practitioner for the area of a Primary Care Trust if he is a medical practitioner who performs personal medical services in the area of the PrimaryCare Trust in accordance with arrangements made under section 28C above;]

(b) is a section 28C medical practitioner for the area of a Health Authority if he is a medical practitioner who provides or performs personal medical services in accordance with arrangements made under section 28C above by the Health Authority (whether with himself or another);

(c) is a deputy dental practitioner for the area of a [<sup>F486</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority if he is a dental practitioner who assists a dental practitioner providing general dental services in that area in the provision of those services but is not himself on a [<sup>F487</sup>list of dental practitioners and dental corporations undertaking to provide general dental services];

<sup>F488</sup>(ca) is a section 28C dental practitioner for the area of a Primary Care Trust if he is a dental practitioner who performs personal dental services in the area of the PrimaryCare Trust in accordance with arrangements made under section 28C above;]

(d) is a section 28C dental practitioner for the area of a Health Authority if he is a dental practitioner who provides or performs personal dental services in accordance with arrangements made under section 28C above by the Health Authority (whether with himself or another).

(4) The condition referred to in subsection (3) above is that the person concerned has notified the [<sup>F489</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority that he wishes to be represented under this section by the appropriate committee for their area (and has not notified them that he wishes to cease to be so represented).

(5) For the purposes of subsection (3) above—

(a) a person is to be treated as assisting a medical practitioner or dental practitioner in the provision of services if he is employed by that practitioner for that purpose or if he acts as his deputy in providing those services; [<sup>F490</sup> . . .

(b) . . . . .]

#### Textual Amendments

**F470** S. 44(ZA1) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. {5(2)}, 42(3); S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(a)

**F471** S. 44(A1)(B1) inserted (1.9.1999 for E. for specified purposes and 1.4.2000 for W. for specified purpose and otherwise prosp.) by 1999 c. 8, ss. 11(2), 67(1); S.I. 1999/2342, art. 2(1), Sch. 1; S.I. 2000/1026, art. 2(1), Sch.

**F472** S. 44(A2) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. {5(3)}, 42(3); S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(a)

*Status:* Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- F473** S. 44(B2) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. {5(4)}, 42(3); S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(a)**
- F474** Words commencing “a Family Health” to “locality is representative” substituted (1.10.1991) for words commencing “the Secretary of State” to “is representative” by National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990 (c. 19, SIF 113:2), **s. 12(4)(a)**; S.I. 1990/2511, **art. 3**
- F475** Words in s. 44(1) substituted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), **Sch. 1 Pt. 1 para. 32(a)** (with Sch. 2 paras. 6, 16)
- F476** S. 44(1)(a)(b) omitted (1.9.1999 for E. for specified purposes and 1.4.2000 for W. for specified purposes) by virtue of 1999 c. 8, **ss. 11(3)**; S.I. 1999/2342, **art. 2(1), Sch. 1**; S.I. 2000/1026, **art. 2(1), Sch.** and repealed (1.4.2000 for E.W.) by 1999 c. 8, ss. 65(2), **Sch. 5**; S.I. 2000/1041, **art. 2(c)(d), Sch.**
- F477** Words repealed by Health and Social Security Act 1984 (c. 48, SIF 113:1), s. 24, **Sch. 8 Pt. 1**
- F478** Words in s. 44(1)(d) inserted (1.4.2002 for E. and 1.7.2002 for W.) by 2001 c. 15, ss. 43(6), 70(2) (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)); S.I. 2002/1095, **art. 2(6)**; S.I. 2002/1475, **art. 2(1), Sch. Pt. 1**
- F479** Words commencing “the Family Health” substituted (1.10.1991) for the word “he” by National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990 (c. 19, SIF 113:2), **s. 12(4)(b)**; S.I. 1991/2511, **art. 3**
- F480** Words in s. 44(1) omitted (1.9.1999 for E. for specified purposes and 1.4.2000 for W. for specified purposes) by virtue of 1999 c. 8, ss. 11(3); S.I. 1999/2342, **art. 2(1), Sch. 1**; S.I. 2000/1026, **art. 2(1), Sch.** and repealed (1.4.2000 for E.W.) by 1999 c. 8, ss. 65(2), 67(1), **Sch. 5**; S.I. 2000/1041, **art. 2(d), Sch.**
- F481** Words in s. 44(2) omitted (1.10.2002) by virtue of National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 5(5), 42(3); S.I. 2002/2478, {art. 3(1(a))}; and those same words repealed (1.10.2002 for E. and 10.10.2002 for W.) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), s. 37(2), **Sch. 9 Pt. 1**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(2)(c)(i)**; S.I. 2002/2532, **art. 2, Sch.**
- F482** S. 44(3)-(5) inserted (1.9.1999 for E. for specified purposes and 1.4.2000 for W. for specified purposes and otherwise prosp.) by 1999 c. 8, **ss. 11(4), 67(1)**; S.I. 1999/2342, **art. 2(1), Sch. 1**; S.I. 2000/1026, **art. 2(1), Sch.**
- F483** Words in s. 44(3)(a) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. {5(6)(a)}, 42(3); S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(a)**
- F484** Words in s. 44(3)(a) substituted (1.4.2002 for E. and 1.7.2002 for W.) by 2001 c. 15, ss. 67(1), 70(2), **Sch. 5 Pt. 1 para. 5(7)(a)** (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)); S.I. 2002/1095, **art. 2(3), Sch.**; S.I. 2002/1475, **art. 2(1) Sch. Pt. 1**
- F485** S. 44(3)(aa) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. {5(6)(b)}, 42(3); S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(a)**
- F486** Words in s. 44(3)(c) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. {5(6)(a)}, 42(3); S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(a)**
- F487** Words in s. 44(3)(c) substituted (1.4.2002 for E. and 1.7.2002 for W.) by 2001 c. 15, ss. 67(1), 70(2), **Sch. 5 Pt. 1 para. 5(7)(b)** (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)); S.I. 2002/1095, **art. 2(3), Sch.**; S.I. 2002/1475, **art. 2(1) Sch. Pt. 1**
- F488** S. 44(3)(ca) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. {5(6)(c)}, 42(3); S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(a)**
- F489** Words in s. 44(4) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. {5(7)}, 42(3); S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(a)**
- F490** S. 44(5)(b) and the preceding word repealed (1.4.2002) by 2001 c. 15, ss. 67(1)(2), 70(2), **Sch. 5 Pt. 1 para. 5(7)(c), Sch. 6 Pt. 1** (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)); S.I. 2002/1095, **art. 2(3), Sch. Pt. 1**; and the repeal also purportedly brought in to force at 1.7.2002 for W. by S.I. 2002/1475, **art. 2(1), Sch. Pt. 1**

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C40** S. 44(1) amended by S.I. 1990/2511, **art. 5(1)**

*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## 45 Functions of local representative committees.

[<sup>F491F492</sup>(1) Regulations may require Health Authorities—

- (a) in the exercise of their functions under this Part of this Act to consult committees recognised by them under section 44 above,
- (b) in the exercise of any of their functions which relate to arrangements under section 28C above to consult committees recognised by them under section 44(A1)(c) or (B1)(c) above,

on such occasions and to such extent as may be prescribed.

[ Regulations may require—

- <sup>F491</sup>(1ZA) (a) Primary Care Trusts, in the exercise of their functions under this Part of this Act, to consult committees recognised by them under section 44 above,
- (b) Strategic Health Authorities, in the exercise of any of their functions which relate to arrangements under section 28C above, to consult committees recognised under section 44(ZA1)(c) or (A2)(c) above by Primary Care Trusts for the area or areas where the personal medical or dental services are provided (or to be provided) under the arrangements,

on such occasions and to such extent as may be prescribed.]

(1A) The [<sup>F493</sup> powers conferred by subsections (1) and (1ZA) above are] without prejudice to any other power to require a [<sup>F494</sup> Strategic Health Authority, Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority to consult any committee recognised under section 44 above.

(1B) Committees recognised under section 44 above shall exercise such other functions as may be prescribed.

(1C) A committee recognised for an area under [<sup>F495</sup> subsection (ZA1)(b) or (c), (A1)(b) or (c), (A2)(b) or (c) or (B1)(b) or (c)] of section 44 above shall, in respect of each year, determine the amount of its administrative expenses for that year attributable —

[<sup>F496</sup>(za) in the case of a committee recognised under subsection (ZA1)(b) or (c)(ii) of that section, to the deputy medical practitioners for the Primary Care Trust's area;

(zb) in the case of a committee recognised under subsection (ZA1)(c) of that section, to the section 28C medical practitioners for that area;]

(a) in the case of a committee recognised under subsection (A1)(b) or (c)(ii) of that section, to the deputy medical practitioners for the area;

(b) in the case of a committee recognised under subsection (A1)(c) of that section, to the section 28C medical practitioners for the area;

[<sup>F497</sup>(ba) in the case of a committee recognised under subsection (A2)(b) or (c)(ii) of that section, to the deputy dental practitioners for the Primary Care Trust's area;

(bb) in the case of a committee recognised under subsection (A2)(c) of that section, to the section 28C dental practitioners for that area;]

(c) in the case of a committee recognised under subsection (B1)(b) or (c)(ii) of that section, to the deputy dental practitioners for the area;

(d) in the case of a committee recognised under subsection (B1)(c) of that section, to the section 28C dental practitioners for the area.]

(2) The [<sup>F498</sup> Primary Care Trust or] [<sup>F499</sup> Health Authority] may, on the request of any committee recognised under section 44 for their [<sup>F499</sup> area], allot to that committee such sums for defraying the committee's administrative expenses [<sup>F500</sup> (including travelling

*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

and subsistence allowances payable to its members)] as may be determined by the [F501Primary Care Trust or][F499Health Authority] . . . F502

- (3) Any sums so allotted shall be out of the moneys available to the [F503Primary Care Trust or][F499Health Authority] for the remuneration of persons of whom the committee so recognised is representative and who provide general medical services, general dental services, general ophthalmic services or pharmaceutical services, as the case may be, under this Part of this Act.

The amount of any such sums shall be deducted from the remuneration of those persons in such manner as may be determined by the [F504Primary Care Trust or][F499Health Authority] . . . F502

- [F505(4) Where a committee has made a determination under subsection (1C) above, it shall apportion the amount so determined among the deputy medical practitioners, section 28C medical practitioners, deputy dental practitioners or section 28C dental practitioners, as the case may be, for the area and each such practitioner shall pay in accordance with the committee's directions the amount so apportioned to him.
- (5) References in this section to administrative expenses of a committee include references to travelling and subsistence allowances payable to its members; but the reference in subsection (2) above to a committee's administrative expenses does not include so much of the committee's administrative expenses as are determined under subsection (1C) above to be attributable to any practitioners mentioned in that subsection.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F491** S. 45(1ZA) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 5(9), 42(3); S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(a)
- F492** S. 45(1)-(1C) substituted (1.9.1999 for E. for specified purposes and 1.4.2000 for specified purposes and otherwise *prosp.*) for s. 45(1) by 1999 c. 8, ss. 11(6), 67(1); S.I. 1999/2342, art. 2(1), Sch. 1; 2000/1026, art. 2(1), Sch.
- F493** Words in s. 45(1A) substituted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 5(10), 42(3); S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(a)
- F494** Words in s. 45(1A) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 5(10), 42(3); S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(a)
- F495** Words in s. 45(1C) substituted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 5(11)(a), 42(3); S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(a)
- F496** S. 45(1C)(za)(zb) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 5(11)(b), 42(3); S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(a)
- F497** S. 45(1C)(ba)(bb) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 5(11)(c), 42(3); S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(a)
- F498** Words in s. 45(2) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 5(12), 42(3); S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(a)
- F499** Words in s. 45 substituted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), Sch. 1 Pt. I para. 33 (with Sch. 2 paras. 6, 16)
- F500** Words in s. 45 omitted (1.9.1999 for E. for specified purposes and 1.4.2000 for specified purposes and otherwise *prosp.*) by virtue of 1999 c. 8, ss. 11(7), 67(1); S.I. 1999/2342, art. 2(1), Sch. 1; 2000/1026, art. 2(1), Sch. and repealed (1.4.2000 for E.W.) by 1999 c. 8, ss. 65(2), 67(1), Sch. 5; S.I. 2000/1041, art. 2(c)(d), Sch.
- F501** Words in s. 45(2) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 5(12), 42(3); S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(a)

**Status:** Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- F502** Words repealed by Health and Social Security Act 1984 (c. 48, SIF 113:1), ss. 5(4), 24, Sch. 3 para. 7(b)(ii), **Sch. 8 Pt. 1**
- F503** Words in s. 45(3) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), **ss. 5(12)**, 42(3); S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(a)**
- F504** Words in s. 45(3) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), **ss. 5(12)**, 42(3); S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(a)**
- F505** S. 45(4)(5) inserted (1.9.1999 for E. for specified purposes and 1.4.2000 for specified purposes and otherwise *prosp.*) by 1999 c. 8, **ss. 11(8)**, 67(1); S.I. 1999/2342, **art. 2(1)**, **Sch. 1**; 2000/1026, **art. 2(1)**, Sch.

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C41** S. 45(1): functions of local authority may be responsibility of an executive of the authority (1.4.2000) by virtue of S.I. 2000/695, **reg. 3(2)(b)**, **Sch. 2**

### *[<sup>F506</sup> Provisions as to disqualification of practitioners]*

#### Textual Amendments

- F506** Cross-heading preceding s. 46 omitted (14.12.2001 for E. and 1.7.2002 for W.) by virtue of 2001 c. 15, **ss. 67(1)**, 70(2), **Sch. 5 Pt 1 para. 5(8)** (with **ss. 64(9)**, 65(4)); S.I. 2001/3738, **art. 2(4)**, **Sch. 2** (subject to **art. 2(5)(6)**); S.I. 2002/1475, **art. 2(1)**

### <sup>F507</sup> 46 Disqualification of practitioners.

#### Textual Amendments

- F507** Ss. 46-49E repealed by 2001 c. 15, **ss. 67**, 70(2), **Sch. 5 para. 5(8)**, **Sch. 6 Pt. 1** (with **ss. 64(9)**, 65(4)). In force: 14.12.2001 for E. by S.I. 2001/3738, **art. 2(4)**, **Sch. 2** (subject to savings in **art. 2(5)(6)**); **Sch. 5 para. 5(8)** in force for W. at 1.7.2002 by S.I. 2002/1475, **art. 2(1)**; **Sch. 6 Pt. 1** in force for W. at 26.8.2002 by S.I. 2002/1919, **art. 2(1)(2)**, **Sch. Pt. 1**

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C42** S. 46 (as saved by S.I. 2001/3738, **art. 2(5)(6)**) modified (E.) (1.10.2002) by The National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (Supplementary, Consequential etc. Provisions) Regulations 2002 (S.I. 2002/2469), **reg. 16(a)**
- C43** S. 46(4) (as saved by S.I. 2001/3738, **art. 2(5)(6)**) modified (E.) (1.10.2002) by The National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (Supplementary, Consequential etc. Provisions) Regulations 2002 (S.I. 2002/2469), **reg. 16(b)**

### 47 Removal of disqualification.

<sup>F508</sup>

#### Textual Amendments

- F508** Ss. 46-49E repealed by 2001 c. 15, **ss. 67**, 70(2), **Sch. 5 para. 5(8)**, **Sch. 6 Pt. 1** (with **ss. 64(9)**, 65(4)). In force: 14.12.2001 for E. by S.I. 2001/3738, **art. 2(4)**, **Sch. 2** (subject to savings in **art. 2(5)(6)**); **Sch.**



*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

5 para. 5(8) in force for W. at 1.7.2002 by S.I. 2002/1475, **art. 2(1)**; Sch. 6 Pt. 1 in force for W. at 26.8.2002 by S.I. 2002/1919, art. 2(1)(2), **Sch. Pt. 1**

## 48 Disqualification provisions in Scotland or Northern Ireland.

F509

### Textual Amendments

**F509** Ss. 46-49E repealed by 2001 c. 15, ss. 67, 70(2), Sch. 5 para. 5(8), **Sch. 6 Pt. 1** (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)). In force: 14.12.2001 for E. by S.I. 2001/3738, art. 2(4), **Sch. 2** (subject to savings in art. 2(5)(6)); Sch. 5 para. 5(8) in force for W. at 1.7.2002 by S.I. 2002/1475, **art. 2(1)**; Sch. 6 Pt. 1 in force for W. at 26.8.2002 by S.I. 2002/1919, art. 2(1)(2), **Sch. Pt. 1**

## 49 Regulations as to ss. 46 to 48.

F510

### Textual Amendments

**F510** Ss. 46-49E repealed by 2001 c. 15, ss. 67, 70(2), Sch. 5 para. 5(8), **Sch. 6 Pt. 1** (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)). In force: 14.12.2001 for E. by S.I. 2001/3738, art. 2(4), **Sch. 2** (subject to savings in art. 2(5)(6)); Sch. 5 para. 5(8) in force for W. at 1.7.2002 by S.I. 2002/1475, **art. 2(1)**; Sch. 6 Pt. 1 in force for W. at 26.8.2002 by S.I. 2002/1919, art. 2(1)(2), **Sch. Pt. 1**

## 49A Applications for interim suspension.

F511

### Textual Amendments

**F511** Ss. 46-49E repealed by 2001 c. 15, ss. 67, 70(2), Sch. 5 para. 5(8), **Sch. 6 Pt. 1** (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)). In force: 14.12.2001 for E. by S.I. 2001/3738, art. 2(4), **Sch. 2** (subject to savings in art. 2(5)(6)); Sch. 5 para. 5(8) in force for W. at 1.7.2002 by S.I. 2002/1475, **art. 2(1)**; Sch. 6 Pt. 1 in force for W. at 26.8.2002 by S.I. 2002/1919, art. 2(1)(2), **Sch. Pt. 1**

### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C44** S. 49A(1) (as saved by S.I. 2001/3738, art. 2(5)(6)) modified (E.) (1.10.2002) by The National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (Supplementary, Consequential etc. Provisions) Regulations 2002 (S.I. 2002/2469), **reg. 16(a)**

## 49B Continuation of suspension pending appeal.

F512

### Textual Amendments

**F512** Ss. 46-49E repealed by 2001 c. 15, ss. 67, 70(2), Sch. 5 para. 5(8), **Sch. 6 Pt. 1** (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)). In force: 14.12.2001 for E. by S.I. 2001/3738, art. 2(4), **Sch. 2** (subject to savings in art. 2(5)(6)); Sch.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

5 para. 5(8) in force for W. at 1.7.2002 by S.I. 2002/1475, **art. 2(1)**; Sch. 6 Pt. 1 in force for W. at 26.8.2002 by S.I. 2002/1919, art. 2(1)(2), **Sch. Pt. 1**

#### 49C Sections 49A and 49B: procedure etc.

F513

##### Textual Amendments

**F513** Ss. 46-49E repealed by 2001 c. 15, ss. 67, 70(2), Sch. 5 para. 5(8), **Sch. 6 Pt. 1** (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)). In force: 14.12.2001 for E. by S.I. 2001/3738, art. 2(4), **Sch. 2** (subject to savings in art. 2(5)(6)); Sch. 5 para. 5(8) in force for W. at 1.7.2002 by S.I. 2002/1475, **art. 2(1)**; Sch. 6 Pt. 1 in force for W. at 26.8.2002 by S.I. 2002/1919, art. 2(1)(2), **Sch. Pt. 1**

#### 49D Suspension provisions in Scotland or Northern Ireland.

F514

##### Textual Amendments

**F514** Ss. 46-49E repealed by 2001 c. 15, ss. 67, 70(2), Sch. 5 para. 5(8), **Sch. 6 Pt. 1** (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)). In force: 14.12.2001 for E. by S.I. 2001/3738, art. 2(4), **Sch. 2** (subject to savings in art. 2(5)(6)); Sch. 5 para. 5(8) in force for W. at 1.7.2002 by S.I. 2002/1475, **art. 2(1)**; Sch. 6 Pt. 1 in force for W. at 26.8.2002 by S.I. 2002/1919, art. 2(1)(2), **Sch. Pt. 1**

#### 49E Payments in consequence of suspension.

F515

##### Textual Amendments

**F515** Ss. 46-49E repealed by 2001 c. 15, ss. 67, 70(2), Sch. 5 para. 5(8), **Sch. 6 Pt. 1** (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)). In force: 14.12.2001 for E. by S.I. 2001/3738, art. 2(4), **Sch. 2** (subject to savings in art. 2(5)(6)); Sch. 5 para. 5(8) in force for W. at 1.7.2002 by S.I. 2002/1475, **art. 2(1)**; Sch. 6 Pt. 1 in force for W. at 26.8.2002 by S.I. 2002/1919, art. 2(1)(2), **Sch. Pt. 1**

#### [<sup>F516</sup>49F Disqualification of practitioners

- (1) If it appears to a [<sup>F517</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority that any of the conditions set out in subsections (2) to (4) is established in relation to a person included in any of the following prepared by them—
- (a) a list of medical practitioners undertaking to provide general medical services,
  - (b) a list of medical practitioners undertaking to provide general ophthalmic services,
  - (c) a list of dental practitioners and dental corporations undertaking to provide general dental services,
  - (d) a list of ophthalmic opticians undertaking to provide general ophthalmic services, or

*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (e) a list of persons undertaking to provide pharmaceutical services, (such a person being referred to in this group of sections as a “practitioner”), they may (or, in cases falling within subsection (6), must) decide to remove him from that list.
- (2) The first condition is that the continued inclusion of the person concerned in the list would be prejudicial to the efficiency of the services which those included in the list undertake to provide (and such a case is referred to in this group of sections as an “efficiency case”).
- (3) The second condition is that the person concerned—
- (a) has (whether on his own or together with another) by an act or omission caused, or risked causing, detriment to any health scheme by securing or trying to secure for himself or another any financial or other benefit, and
  - (b) knew that he or (as the case may be) the other was not entitled to the benefit, (and such a case is referred to in this group of sections as a “fraud case”).
- (4) The third condition is that the person concerned is unsuitable to be included in the list (and such a case is referred to in this group of sections as an “unsuitability case”).
- (5) “This group of sections” means this section and sections 49G to 49R below.
- (6) In unsuitability cases, the [<sup>F518</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority must remove the practitioner from the list in prescribed circumstances.
- (7) The [<sup>F519</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority must state which condition (or conditions) they are relying on when removing a practitioner from a list.
- (8) In subsection (3), “health scheme” means—
- (a) any of the health services under section 1(1) above or any corresponding enactment extending to Scotland or Northern Ireland, and
  - (b) any prescribed scheme,
- and regulations may prescribe any scheme for the purposes of this subsection which appears to the Secretary of State to be a health or medical scheme paid for out of public funds.
- (9) Detriment to a health scheme includes detriment to any patient of, or person working in, that scheme or any person liable to pay charges for services provided under that scheme.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F516** S. 49F inserted (22.11.2001 for certain purposes for E., 14.12.2001 for all other purposes (except those relating to the provision of pharmaceutical services under the 1977 Act) for E. and 1.7.2002 for W.) by 2001 c. 15, ss. 25, 70(2) (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)); S.I. 2001/3738, art. 2(2), Sch. 1 Pt. II; S.I. 2002/1475, art. 2(1), Sch. Pt. 1
- F517** Words in s. 49F inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 21(a); S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(d)
- F518** Words in s. 49F inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 21(a); S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(d)
- F519** Words in s. 49F inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 21(a); S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(d)

*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C45** S. 49F(8): definition extended (W.) (26.8.2002) by [National Health Service \(General Ophthalmic Services\) Regulations 1986 \(S.I. 1986/975\)](#), reg. 9A (as inserted (26.8.2002) by [National Health Service \(General Ophthalmic Services\) \(Amendment\) \(Wales\) Regulations 2002 \(S.I. 2002/1883\)](#)), **reg. 6)**

#### [<sup>F520</sup>49G Contingent removal

- (1) In an efficiency case or a fraud case, the [<sup>F521</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority may, instead of deciding to remove a practitioner from their list, decide to remove him contingently.
- (2) If they so decide, they must impose such conditions as they may decide on his inclusion in the list with a view to—
  - (a) removing any prejudice to the efficiency of the services in question (in an efficiency case), or
  - (b) preventing further acts or omissions within section 49F(3)(a) above (in a fraud case).
- (3) If the [<sup>F522</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority determine that the practitioner has failed to comply with a condition, they may decide to—
  - (a) vary the conditions, or impose different conditions, or
  - (b) remove him from their list.
- (4) The [<sup>F523</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority may decide to vary the terms of service of the person concerned for the purpose of or in connection with the imposition of any conditions by virtue of this section.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F520** S. 49G inserted (14.12.2001 for E. for all purposes except those relating to the provision of pharmaceutical services under the 1977 Act and 1.7.2002 for W.) by [2001 c. 15, ss. 25, 70\(2\)](#) (with [ss. 64\(9\), 65\(4\)](#)); [S.I. 2001/3738, art. 2\(3\)](#), Sch. 1 Pt. III; [S.I. 2002/1475, art. 2\(1\)](#), Sch. Pt. 1
- F521** Words in s. 49G inserted (1.10.2002) by [National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 \(c. 17\)](#), ss. 2(5), 42(3), **Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 21(b)**; [S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3\(1\)\(d\)](#)
- F522** Words in s. 49G inserted (1.10.2002) by [National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 \(c. 17\)](#), ss. 2(5), 42(3), **Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 21(b)**; [S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3\(1\)\(d\)](#)
- F523** Words in s. 49G inserted (1.10.2002) by [National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 \(c. 17\)](#), ss. 2(5), 42(3), **Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 21(b)**; [S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3\(1\)\(d\)](#)

#### [<sup>F524</sup>49H Fraud and unsuitability cases: supplementary

- (1) Where the practitioner is a body corporate, the body corporate is to be treated for the purposes of this group of sections as meeting the second or third condition referred to in section 49F(3) and (4) above—
  - (a) in the case of an ophthalmic optician not referred to in paragraph (b) or a dental corporation, if any director meets that condition (whether or not he first did so when he was a director), and
  - (b) in the case of a body corporate carrying on a retail pharmacy business or an ophthalmic optician which is a limited liability partnership, if any one of the

*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

body of persons controlling the body meets that condition (whether or not he first did so when he was such a person).

- (2) A practitioner is to be treated for the purposes of this group of sections as meeting the condition referred to in section 49F(3) above if—
- (a) another person, because of an act or omission of his occurring in the course of providing any services mentioned in section 49F(1) above on the practitioner's behalf, meets that condition; and
  - (b) the practitioner failed to take all such steps as were reasonable to prevent acts or omissions within section 49F(3)(a) above occurring in the course of the provision of those services on his behalf.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F524** S. 49H inserted (14.12.2001 for E. for all purposes except those relating to the provision of pharmaceutical services under the 1977 Act and 1.7.2002 for W.) by 2001 c. 15, ss. 25, 70(2) (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)); S.I. 2001/3738, art. 2(3), Sch. 1 Pt. III; S.I. 2002/1475, art. 2(1), Sch. Pt. 1

#### [<sup>F525</sup>49I Suspension

- (1) If the [<sup>F526</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority are satisfied that it is necessary to do so for the protection of members of the public or is otherwise in the public interest, they may suspend a practitioner from their list—
- (a) while they decide whether or not to exercise their powers under section 49F or 49G (other than in circumstances falling within paragraph (b)), or
  - (b) while they wait for a decision affecting the practitioner of a court or of a body which regulates—
    - (i) the practitioner's profession,
    - (ii) the profession of a person providing any of the services mentioned in section 49F(1) on the practitioner's behalf, or
    - (iii) if the practitioner is a body corporate, the profession of one of its directors or, as the case may be, one of the body of persons controlling it or (if it is a limited liability partnership) one of its members,
 or one of that regulatory body's committees.
- (2) The references in subsection (1)(b) to a court or regulatory body are to a court or such a body anywhere in the world.
- (3) In a case falling within subsection (1)(a), the [<sup>F526</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority must specify how long the period of suspension is to be.
- (4) In a case falling within subsection (1)(b), the [<sup>F526</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority may specify that the practitioner shall remain suspended after the decision referred to there for an additional period which the [<sup>F526</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority must specify.
- (5) In either case—
- (a) before that period expires they may extend, or further extend, the suspension for a further specified period, or
  - (b) if that period has expired, they may impose a further suspension, for a period which they must specify.

*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (6) The period of suspension (in a subsection (1)(a) case) or the additional period (in a subsection (1)(b) case), including in both cases the period of any further suspension imposed under subsection (5)(b), may not exceed six months in aggregate, except—
  - (a) in prescribed circumstances, when it may not extend beyond any prescribed event (which may be the expiry of a prescribed period),
  - (b) if, on the application of the [<sup>F526</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority, the FHSAA orders accordingly before the expiry of the period of suspension, or
  - (c) if the [<sup>F526</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority have applied under paragraph (b) before the expiry of the period of suspension, but the FHSAA has not made an order by the time it expires, in which case it continues until the FHSAA has made an order.
- (7) If the FHSAA does so order, it shall specify—
  - (a) the date on which the period of suspension is to end, or
  - (b) an event beyond which it is not to continue.
- (8) The FHSAA may, on the application of the [<sup>F526</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority, make a further order (complying with subsection (7)) at any time while the period of suspension pursuant to the earlier order is still continuing.
- (9) The Secretary of State may make regulations providing for payments to practitioners who are suspended.
- (10) Those regulations may include provision for the amount of the payments, or the method of calculating the amount, to be determined by the Secretary of State or by another person appointed for the purpose by the Secretary of State.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F525** S. 49I inserted (22.11.2001 for certain purposes for E., 14.12.2001 for all other purposes (except those relating to the provision of pharmaceutical services under the 1977 Act) for E. and 1.7.2002 for W.) by 2001 c. 15, ss. 25, 70(2) (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)); S.I. 2001/3738, art. 2(2), **Sch. 1 Pt. II**; S.I. 2002/1475, art. 2(1), **Sch. Pt. 1**
- F526** Words in s. 49I inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), **Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 21(c)**; S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(d)

#### [<sup>F527</sup>49J Suspension pending appeal

- (1) This section applies if the [<sup>F528</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority decide to remove a practitioner from a list under section 49F.
- (2) In such a case they may also decide to suspend the practitioner from the list pending any appeal by him, if they are satisfied that it is necessary to do so for the protection of members of the public or is otherwise in the public interest.
- (3) If they do suspend the practitioner under this section, the suspension has effect from the date when the [<sup>F528</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority gave him notice of the suspension.
- (4) The suspension has effect until its revocation under subsection (5) or (6) or, if later, until the expiry of the period of 28 days referred to in section 49M(1) below, or, if the practitioner appeals under section 49M, until the FHSAA has disposed of the appeal.



*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (5) The [<sup>F528</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority may revoke a suspension imposed under this section.
- (6) If the practitioner appeals under section 49M against the [<sup>F529</sup>decision of the Primary Care Trust or of the Health Authority] to remove him from the list, the FHSAA may also revoke a suspension imposed on him under this section.
- (7) Subsections (9) and (10) of section 49I above apply for the purposes of this section as they apply for the purposes of that.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F527** S. 49J inserted (14.12.2001 for E. for all purposes except those relating to the provision of pharmaceutical services under the 1977 Act and 1.7.2002 for W.) by 2001 c. 15, ss. 25, 70(2) (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)); S.I. 2001/3738, art. 2(3), Sch. 1 Pt. III; S.I. 2002/1475, art. 2(1), Sch. Pt. 1
- F528** Words in s. 49J inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 22(a); S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(d)
- F529** Words in s. 49J(6) substituted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 22(b); S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(d)

#### [<sup>F530</sup>49K Effect of suspension

While a practitioner is suspended (whether under section 49I or under section 49J above) he is to be treated as not being included in the list from which he has been suspended even though his name appears in it.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F530** S. 49K inserted (14.12.2001 for E. for all purposes except those relating to the provision of pharmaceutical services under the 1977 Act and 1.7.2002 for W.) by 2001 c. 15, ss. 25, 70(2) (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)); S.I. 2001/3738, art. 2(3), Sch. 1 Pt. III; S.I. 2002/1475, art. 2(1), Sch. Pt. 1

#### [<sup>F531</sup>49L Review of decisions

- (1) The [<sup>F532</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority may, and (except in prescribed cases) if requested in writing to do so by the practitioner must, review a contingent removal or a suspension (other than a contingent removal or a suspension imposed by, or a suspension continuing pursuant to, an order of the FHSAA, or a suspension imposed under section 49J above).
- (2) The practitioner may not request a review before the expiry of the period of—
  - (a) three months beginning with the date of the [<sup>F533</sup>decision of the Primary Care Trust or of the Health Authority] to suspend or contingently remove him, or (as appropriate),
  - (b) six months beginning with the date of their decision on the previous review.
- (3) On such a review, the [<sup>F534</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority may—
  - (a) confirm the contingent removal or the suspension,
  - (b) in the case of a suspension, terminate it,

**Status:** Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (c) in the case of a contingent removal, vary the conditions, impose different conditions, revoke the contingent removal, or remove the practitioner from the list.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F531** S. 49L inserted (22.11.2001 for certain purposes for E., 14.12.2001 for all other purposes (except those relating to the provision of pharmaceutical services under the 1977 Act) for E. and 1.7.2002 for W.) by 2001 c. 15, ss. 25, 70(2) (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)); S.I. 2001/3738, art. 2(2), Sch. 1 Pt. II; S.I. 2002/1475, art. 2(1)
- F532** Words in s. 49L(1) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 23(a); S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(d)
- F533** Words in s. 49L(2) substituted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 23(b); S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(d)
- F534** Words in s. 49L(3) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 23(a); S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(d)

#### [<sup>F535</sup>49M Appeals

- (1) A practitioner may appeal to the FHSAA against a decision of a [<sup>F536</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority mentioned in subsection (2) by giving notice in writing to the FHSAA within the period of 28 days beginning with the date on which the [<sup>F536</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority gave him notice of the decision.
- (2) The [<sup>F536</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority decisions in question are—
  - (a) to remove the practitioner from a list (under section 49F or 49G(3) or under subsection (5)(b) of this section),
  - (b) to remove him contingently (under section 49G),
  - (c) to impose any particular condition under section 49G, or to vary any condition or to impose any different condition under that section,
  - (d) to vary his terms of service (under section 49G(4)),
  - (e) any decision on a review of a contingent removal under section 49L.
- (3) The appeal shall be by way of redetermination of the [<sup>F537</sup>decision of the Primary Care Trust or of the Health Authority] .
- (4) On an appeal, the FHSAA may make any decision which the [<sup>F536</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority could have made.
- (5) If the FHSAA decides to remove the practitioner contingently—
  - (a) the [<sup>F536</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority and the practitioner may each apply to the FHSAA for the conditions imposed on the practitioner to be varied, for different conditions to be imposed, or for the contingent removal to be revoked, and
  - (b) the [<sup>F536</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority may remove him from their list if they determine that he has failed to comply with a condition.
- (6) The [<sup>F536</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority shall not remove a person from a list, or impose a contingent removal—
  - (a) until the expiry of the period of 28 days referred to in subsection (1), or
  - (b) if the practitioner appeals within that period, until the FHSAA has disposed of the appeal.

*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (7) Regulations may provide for payments by <sup>F538</sup>Primary Care Trusts and] Health Authorities to practitioners who are removed from lists pursuant to decisions of the FHSAA under this section, but whose appeals against those decisions are successful.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F535** S. 49M inserted (22.11.2001 for certain purposes for E., 14.12.2001 for all other purposes (except those relating to the provision of pharmaceutical services under the 1977 Act) for E. and 1.7.2002 for W.) by 2001 c. 15, ss. 25, 70(2) (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)); S.I. 2001/3738, art. 2(2), Sch. 1 Pt. II; S.I. 2002/1475, art. 2(1)
- F536** Words in s. 49M inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 24(a); S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(d)
- F537** Words in s. 49M(3) substituted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 24(b); S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(d)
- F538** Words in s. 49M(7) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 24(c); S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(d)

#### <sup>F539</sup>49N National disqualification

- (1) If the FHSAA removes the practitioner from a list, it may also decide to disqualify him from inclusion in—
- (a) all lists referred to in section 49F(1)(a) to (e) prepared by <sup>F540</sup>all Primary Care Trusts and] all Health Authorities,
  - (b) all supplementary lists prepared by <sup>F540</sup>all Primary Care Trusts and] all Health Authorities, and
  - (c) all services lists prepared by <sup>F540</sup>all Primary Care Trusts and] all Health Authorities under section 28DA above or under section 8ZA of the National Health Service (Primary Care) Act 1997 (c. 46), or any list corresponding to a services list prepared by <sup>F541</sup>any Primary Care Trust or] any Health Authority by virtue of regulations made under section 41 of the Health and Social Care Act 2001,
- or only from inclusion in one or more descriptions of such lists prepared by <sup>F540</sup>all Primary Care Trusts and] all Health Authorities, the description being specified by the FHSAA in its decision.
- (2) A decision by the FHSAA to do what is mentioned in subsection (1) is referred to in this section as the imposition of a national disqualification.
- (3) The FHSAA may also impose a national disqualification on a practitioner if it dismisses an appeal by him against <sup>F542</sup>the refusal by a Primary Care Trust or Health Authority] to include him in such a list (or, in the case of a medical list, to nominate or approve him for inclusion in it).
- (4) The <sup>F543</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority may apply to the FHSAA for a national disqualification to be imposed on a person after they have—
- (a) removed him from a list of theirs of any of the kinds referred to in subsection (1)(a) to (c), or
  - (b) refused to include him in such a list (or, in the case of a medical list, to nominate or approve him for inclusion in it).

**Status:** Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (5) Any such application must be made before the end of the period of three months beginning with the date of the removal or of their refusal.
- (6) If the FHSAA imposes a national disqualification on a person—
- (a) no [<sup>F544</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority may include him in a list of any of the kinds from which he has been disqualified from inclusion prepared by them, and
  - (b) if he is included in such a list, [<sup>F545</sup>each Primary Care Trust and] each Health Authority in whose list he is included must remove him from it.
- (7) The FHSAA may at the request of the person upon whom it has been imposed review a national disqualification, and on a review may confirm it or revoke it.
- (8) Subject to subsection (9), the person may not request such a review before the end of the period of—
- (a) two years beginning with the date on which the national disqualification was imposed, or
  - (b) one year beginning with the date of the FHSAA's decision on the last such review.
- (9) The Secretary of State may provide in regulations for subsection (8) to have effect in prescribed circumstances as if the reference there to “two years” or “one year” were a reference to a different period specified in the regulations.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F539** S. 49N inserted (22.11.2001 for certain purposes for E., 14.12.2001 for all other purposes (except those relating to the provision of pharmaceutical services under the 1977 Act) for E. and 1.7.2002 for W.) by 2001 c. 15, ss. 25, 70(2) (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)); S.I. 2001/3738, art. 2(2), Sch. 1 Pt. II; S.I. 2002/1475, art. 2(1) Sch. Pt. 1

**F540** Words in s. 49N(1) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 25(2)(a); S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(d)

**F541** Words in s. 49N(1)(c) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 25(2)(b); S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(d)

**F542** Words in s. 49N(3) substituted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 25(3); S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(d)

**F543** Words in s. 49N(4) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 25(4); S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(d)

**F544** Words in s. 49N(6)(a) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 25(5)(a); S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(d)

**F545** Words in s. 49N(6)(b) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 25(5)(b); S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(d)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C46** S. 49N(8) modified (W.) (26.8.2002) by S.I. 1992/635, reg. 7H (as inserted (26.8.2002) by The National Health Service (General Medical Services) (Amendment) (Wales) (No. 2) Regulations 2002 (S.I. 2002/1896), reg. 5)

#### [<sup>F546</sup>490 Notification of decisions

Regulations may require a [<sup>F547</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority to notify prescribed persons, or persons of prescribed descriptions, of any decision they make

*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

under this group of sections, and of any information relevant to the decision which they consider it appropriate to include in the notification.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F546** S. 49O inserted (22.11.2001 for E. and 1.7.2002 for W.) by 2001 c. 15, ss. 25, 70(2) (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)); S.I. 2001/3738, art. 2(1), Sch. 1 Pt. I; S.I. 2002/1475, art. 2(1)

**F547** Words in s. 49O inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 26; S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(d)

#### [<sup>F548</sup> 49P Withdrawal from lists

Regulations may provide for circumstances in which a practitioner—

- (a) whom a [<sup>F549</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority are investigating in order to see whether there are grounds for exercising their powers under section 49F, 49G or 49I,
- (b) whom a [<sup>F549</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority have decided to remove from a list under section 49F or 49G, or contingently remove under section 49G, but who has not yet been removed or contingently removed, or
- (c) who has been suspended under section 49I,

may not withdraw from a list in which he is included.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F548** S. 49P inserted (22.11.2001 for E. and 1.7.2002 for W.) by 2001 c. 15, ss. 25, 70(2) (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)); S.I. 2001/3738, art. 2(1), Sch. 1 Pt. I; S.I. 2002/1475, art. 2(1)

**F549** Words in s. 49P inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 27; S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(d)

#### [<sup>F550</sup> 49Q Regulations

- (1) Any decision by a [<sup>F551</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority referred to in this group of sections shall be reached in accordance with regulations made by the Secretary of State about such decisions.
- (2) The regulations shall include provision—
  - (a) requiring the practitioner to be given notice of any allegation against him,
  - (b) giving him the opportunity of putting his case at a hearing before a [<sup>F552</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority make any decision affecting him under this group of sections,
  - (c) requiring him to be given notice of the [<sup>F553</sup>decision of the Primary Care Trust or of the Health Authority] and the reasons for it and of any right of appeal which he may have.
- (3) The regulations may, in particular, make provision as to criteria which the [<sup>F554</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority must apply when making decisions in unsuitability cases.]

**Status:** Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### Textual Amendments

- F550** S. 49Q inserted (22.11.2001 for E. and 1.7.2002 for W.) by 2001 c. 15, ss. 25, 70(2) (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)); S.I. 2001/3738, art. 2(1), Sch. 1 Pt. I; S.I. 2002/1475, art. 2(1)
- F551** Words in s. 49Q(1) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 28(2); S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(d)
- F552** Words in s. 49Q(2)(b) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 28(3)(a); S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(d)
- F553** Words in s. 49Q(2)(c) substituted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 28(3)(b); S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(d)
- F554** Words in s. 49Q(3) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 28(4); S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(d)

### [<sup>F555</sup>49R Corresponding provision in Scotland and Northern Ireland

- (1) This section applies where it appears to the Secretary of State that there is provision in Scotland or Northern Ireland under which a person may be dealt with in any way which corresponds (whether or not exactly) with a way in which a person may be dealt with under this group of sections.
- (2) A decision in Scotland or Northern Ireland to deal with such a person in such a way is referred to in this section as a “corresponding decision”.
- (3) If this section applies, the Secretary of State may make regulations providing for the effect to be given in England and Wales to a corresponding decision.
- (4) That effect need not be the same as the effect of the decision in the place where it was made.
- (5) The regulations may not provide for a corresponding decision to be reviewed or revoked in England and Wales.]

### Textual Amendments

- F555** S. 49R inserted (22.11.2001 for E. and 1.7.2002 for W.) by 2001 c. 15, ss. 25, 70(2) (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)); S.I. 2001/3738, art. 2(1), Sch. 1 Pt. I; S.I. 2002/1475, art. 2(1)

### [<sup>F556</sup>The Family Health Services Appeal Authority

### Textual Amendments

- F556** S. 49S and cross-heading inserted (1.10.2001 for certain purposes for E., 1.12.2001 for all other purposes for E. and 26.8.2002 for W.) by 2001 c. 15, ss. 27(1), 70(2) (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)); S.I. 2001/3294, art. 4, Sch. Pt. I (subject to transitional provisions in Sch. Pt. II); S.I. 2002/1919, art. 3 (subject to art. 3(2))

### [<sup>F557</sup>49S The Family Health Services Appeal Authority

- (1) There shall be a body to be known as the Family Health Services Appeal Authority (“FHSAA”).



*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (2) The FHSAA shall be constituted in accordance with Schedule 9A to this Act, which also makes other provision in relation to the FHSAA.
- (3) The FHSAA shall have such functions as are conferred on it by this Act or by any other enactment.
- (4) The Secretary of State may direct the FHSAA to exercise any of his functions relating to the determination of appeals to him which are specified in the directions.
- (5) Directions under subsection (4) shall be given by regulations or by an instrument in writing.
- (6) The Secretary of State may make available to the FHSAA any facilities (including the use of any premises) provided by him or by a Special Health Authority or NHS trust for any service under this Act, and the services of persons employed by the Secretary of State or by a Special Health Authority or NHS trust.
- (7) Subsections (1) to (3) of section 27 above apply in relation to the services of persons employed by a Special Health Authority and made available under subsection (6) as they apply in relation to the services of officers of Special Health Authorities to be made available under section 26 above.
- (8) For the purposes of subsection (6)—
  - (a) the Secretary of State may give directions to an NHS trust requiring it to make facilities or the services of persons available as mentioned there; but
  - (b) subsections (1) and (2) of section 27 above apply in relation to the services of such persons as they apply in relation to the services of officers to be made available by virtue of section 26 above by a [<sup>F558</sup>Strategic Health Authority,] Health Authority, Special Health Authority or Primary Care Trust.]]

#### Textual Amendments

**F557** S. 49S inserted (1.10.2001 for certain purposes for E., 1.12.2001 for all other purposes for E. and 26.8.2002 for W.) by 2001 c. 15, ss. 27(1), 70(2) (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)); S.I. 2001/3294, art. 4, **Sch. Pt. I** (subject to transitional provisions in **Sch. Pt. II**); S.I. 2002/1919, {art. 3 } (subject to art. 3(2))

**F558** Words in s. 49S(8)(b) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 1(3), 42(3), **Sch. 1 Pt. 1 para. 18**; S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(c)

#### *Other provisions supplementary to Part II*

### 50 Exercise of choice of practitioner in certain cases.

Regulations may provide that, where a right to choose the person by whom [<sup>F559</sup>general ophthalmic] services are to be provided under this Part of this Act is conferred by or under this Part, that right shall, in the case of such persons as may be specified in the regulations, be exercised on their behalf by other persons so specified.

#### Textual Amendments

**F559** Words in s. 50 inserted (1.10.1998) by 1997 c. 46, s. 41(10), **Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 15**; S.I. 1998/1998, art. 2(2)(b), **Sch. 2**

**Status:** Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

## 51 University clinical teaching and research.

<sup>F560</sup>(1) It is the Secretary of State's duty to <sup>F561</sup>exercise his functions under this Act and Part I of the <sup>M32</sup>National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990 so as to secure that there are made available] such facilities as he considers are reasonably required by any university which has a medical or dental school, in connection with clinical teaching and with research connected with clinical medicine or, as the case may be, clinical dentistry.

<sup>F562</sup>(2) Regulations may provide for any functions exercisable by a <sup>F563</sup>Strategic Health Authority,] Health Authority <sup>F564</sup>Special Health Authority <sup>F565</sup>, Primary Care Trust or Local Health Board]] in relation to the provision of facilities such as are mentioned in subsection (1) above to be exercisable by the <sup>F566</sup>Strategic Health Authority,] Health Authority <sup>F564</sup>Special Health Authority <sup>F565</sup>, Primary Care Trust or Local Health Board]] jointly with one or more other relevant health service bodies.

(3) For the purposes of subsection (2) above the following are relevant health service bodies—

- <sup>F567</sup>(za) [ Strategic Health Authorities;]
- (a) Health Authorities;
- (b) Special Health Authorities;
- <sup>F568</sup>(bb) [ Primary Care Trusts]; <sup>F569</sup>and]
- <sup>F570</sup>(bbb) [ Local Health Boards; and]
- (c) NHS trusts.]

### Textual Amendments

- F560** S. 51 re-numbered as s. 51(1) (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), **Sch. 1 Pt. I para. 35** (with **Sch. 2 paras. 6, 16**)
- F561** Words in s. 51(1) substituted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), **Sch. 1 Pt. I para. 35(a)** (with **Sch. 2 paras. 6, 16**)
- F562** S. 51(2)(3) inserted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), **Sch. 1 Pt. I para. 35(b)** (with **Sch. 2 paras. 6, 16**)
- F563** Words in s. 51(2) inserted (2.9.2002 for E. and 1.10.2002 for W.) by **National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002** (c. 17), ss. 1(3), 42(3) {**Sch. 1 Pt. 1 para. 19(a)(i)**}; S.I. 2002/2202, **art. 3**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(c)**
- F564** Words in s. 51(2) substituted (4.1.2000 for E. and otherwise *prosp.*) by 1999 c. 8, ss. 65(1), 67(1), **Sch. 4 para. 23(a)**; S.I. 1999/2342, **art. 2(3)(a)**, **Sch. 2**
- F565** Words in s. 51(2) substituted (10.10.2002 for W. and otherwise *prosp.*) by **National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002** (c. 17), ss. 6(2), 42(3), **Sch. 5 para. 15(a)**; S.I. 2002/2532, **art. 2**, **Sch.**
- F566** Words in s. 51(2) inserted (2.9.2002 for E. and 1.10.2002 for W.) by **National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002** (c. 17), ss. 1(3), 42(3) {**Sch. 1 Pt. 1 para. 19(a)(ii)**}; S.I. 2002/2202, **art. 3**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(c)**
- F567** S. 51(3)(za) inserted (2.9.2002 for E. and 1.10.2002 for W.) by **National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002** (c. 17), ss. 1(3), 42(3) {**Sch. 1 Pt. 1 para. 19(b)**}; S.I. 2002/2202, **art. 3**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(c)**
- F568** S. 51(3)(bb) inserted (4.1.2000 for E. and otherwise *prosp.*) by 1999 c. 8, ss. 65(1), 67(1), **Sch. 4 para. 23(b)**; S.I. 1999/2342, **art. 2(3)(a)**, **Sch. 2**

*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**F569** Word in s. 51(3)(bb) omitted (10.10.2002 for W. and otherwise prosp.) by virtue of National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 6(2), 37(2), 42(3), Sch. 5 para. 15(b), Sch. 9 Pt. 1; S.I. 2002/2532, art. 2, Sch.

**F570** S. 51(3)(bbb) inserted (10.10.2002 for W. and otherwise prosp.) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 6(2), 42(3), Sch. 5 para. 15(b); S.I. 2002/2532, art. 2, Sch.

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C47** S. 51(1): functions of local authority not to be responsibility of an executive of the authority (1.4.2000) by virtue of S.I. 2000/695, reg. 3(2)(a), Sch. 1

S. 51(1) restricted (1.4.2000) by S.I. 2000/695, reg. 6

**C48** S. 51(1): functions of Health Authorities modified (E.) (1.4.2001) by S.I. 2001/747, regs. 5(6), 6(5)

S. 51(1): transfer of functions (E.) (1.4.2001) by S.I. 2001/747, regs. 2(1), 3, 4, Sch. 1

**Marginal Citations**

**M32** 1990 c. 19.

**52 Use of accommodation.**

If the Secretary of State considers that any accommodation provided by him by virtue of this Act is suitable for use in connection with the provision of general medical services, general dental services, general ophthalmic services or pharmaceutical services he may make the accommodation available on such terms as he thinks fit to persons providing any of those services.

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C49** S. 52: transfer of functions (E.) (1.4.2001) by S.I. 2001/747, regs. 2(1), 3, 4, Sch. 1

**53 Immunisation.**

Where the Secretary of State arranges with medical practitioners for the vaccination or immunisation of persons against disease, he shall so far as reasonably practicable give every medical practitioner providing general medical services an opportunity to participate in the arrangements.

**[<sup>F571</sup>54 Sale of medical practices.**

(1) It is unlawful to sell the goodwill of the medical practice of a person who has at any time—

(a) provided general medical services under arrangements made with any Council, Committee [<sup>F572</sup>, Primary Care Trust] or Authority under the <sup>M33</sup>National Health Service Act 1946, the <sup>M34</sup>National Health Service Reorganisation Act 1973 or this Act, or

(b) provided or performed personal medical services in accordance with section 28C arrangements,

unless that person no longer provides or performs such services and has never carried on the practice in a relevant area.

(2) In this section—

**Status:** Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

“goodwill” includes any part of goodwill and, in relation to a person practising in partnership, means his share of the goodwill of the partnership practice;

“medical practice” includes any part of a medical practice; and

“relevant area”, in relation to any Council, Committee [<sup>F572</sup>, Primary Care Trust] or Authority by arrangement with whom a person has at any time—

- (a) provided general medical services, or
- (b) provided or performed personal medical services in accordance with section 28C arrangements,

means the area, district or locality of that Council, Committee [<sup>F572</sup>, Primary Care Trust] or Authority (at that time).

(3) Schedule 10 supplements the provisions of this section.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F571** S. 54 substituted (1.4.1998) by 1997 c. 46, 34(1); S.I. 1998/631, art. 2(1)(a), **Sch. 1**

**F572** Words in s. 54 inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), **Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 29**; S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(d)

#### Marginal Citations

**M33** 1946 c. 81.

**M34** 1973 c. 32.

55 ..... <sup>F573</sup>

#### Textual Amendments

**F573** S. 55 repealed by National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990 (c. 19, SIF 113:2), ss. 12(5), 66(2), **Sch. 10**

## 56 Inadequate services.

If the Secretary of State is satisfied, after such inquiry as he may think fit, as respects [<sup>F574</sup>the area, or part of the area, of a [<sup>F575</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority] that the persons whose names are included in any list prepared under this Part of this Act—

- (a) of medical practitioners undertaking to provide general medical services,
- (b) of dental practitioners undertaking to provide general dental services,
- (c) of persons undertaking to provide general ophthalmic services, or
- (d) of persons undertaking to provide pharmaceutical services,

are not such as to secure the adequate provision of the services [<sup>F576</sup>in question in that area or part, or that for any other reason any considerable number of persons in any such area or part are not] receiving satisfactory services under the arrangements in force under this Part, then—

- [<sup>F577</sup>(i) he may authorise [<sup>F578</sup>the [<sup>F579</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority] to make such other arrangements as he may approve, or may himself make such other arrangements, and]

*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (ii) he may dispense with any of the requirements of regulations made under this Part so far as appears to him necessary to meet exceptional circumstances and enable such arrangements to be made.

#### Textual Amendments

- F574** Words in s. 56 substituted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), **Sch. 1 Pt. I para. 37(a)** (with Sch. 2 paras. 6, 16)
- F575** Words in s. 56 inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), **Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 30(a)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(d)**
- F576** Words in s. 56 substituted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), **Sch. 1 Pt. I para. 37(b)** (with Sch. 2 paras. 6, 16)
- F577** S. 56(i) substituted by Health and Social Security Act 1984 (c. 48, SIF 113:1), s. 5(4), **Sch. 3 para. 8**
- F578** Words in s. 56 substituted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), **Sch. 1 Pt. I para. 37(c)** (with Sch. 2 paras. 6, 16)
- F579** Words in s. 56(i) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), **Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 30(b)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(d)**

## PART III

### OTHER POWERS OF THE SECRETARY OF STATE AS TO THE HEALTH SERVICE

#### *Control of maximum prices for medical supplies*

**[<sup>F580</sup>57 Maximum price of medical supplies may be controlled.**

- (1) The Secretary of State may by order provide for controlling maximum prices to be charged for any medical supplies required for the purposes of this Act.
- (2) The Secretary of State may by direction given with respect to any undertaking, or by order made with respect to any class or description of undertakings, being an undertaking or class or description of undertakings concerned with medical supplies required for the purposes of this Act, require persons carrying on the undertaking or undertakings of that class or description—
  - (a) to keep such books, accounts and records relating to the undertaking as may be prescribed by the direction or, as the case may be, by the order or a notice served under the order;
  - (b) to furnish at such times, in such manner and in such form as may be so prescribed such estimates, returns or information relating to the undertaking as may be so prescribed.
- (3) The additional provisions set out in Schedule 11 to this Act have effect in relation to this section; and
 

“medical supplies” in this section includes surgical, dental and optical materials and equipment; and

“undertaking” in this section and that Schedule means any public utility undertaking or any undertaking by way of trade or business.]

**Status:** Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

**Textual Amendments**

**F580** S. 57 ceased to have effect for specified purposes (1.9.1999 for specified purposes otherwise 1.11.1999) by virtue of 1999 c. 8, s. 38(5); S.I. 1999/2177, art. 2(3)(b)(4)

*Additional powers as to services and supplies; and the use of those services and supplies for private patients*

58 ..... F581

**Textual Amendments**

**F581** S. 58 repealed by Health and Medicines Act 1988 (c. 49, SIF 113:2), s. 25(2), Sch. 3

59, 60. .... F582

**Textual Amendments**

**F582** Ss. 6(1)(2)(6)(7), 30(2), 59, 60, 67–71, 73–76, Sch. 4 para. 1, Sch. 15 paras. 11, 41, 68—70 repealed by Health Services Act 1980 (c. 53, SIF 113:2), Sch. 7

61 ..... F583

**Textual Amendments**

**F583** S. 61 repealed by Health and Medicines Act 1988 (c. 49, SIF 113:2), s. 25(2), Sch. 3

**62 Restriction of powers under ss. 25, 58 and 61.**

The Secretary of State shall exercise the powers conferred on him by the provisions of section 25 above (supplies not readily obtainable) . . . <sup>F584</sup> only if and to the extent that he is satisfied that anything which he proposes to do or allow under those powers—

- (a) will not to a significant extent interfere with the performance by him of any duty imposed on him by this Act to provide accommodation or services of any kind; and
- (b) will not to a significant extent operate to the disadvantage of persons seeking or afforded admission or access to accommodation or services at health service hospitals (whether as resident or non-resident patients) otherwise than as private patients.

**Textual Amendments**

**F584** Words repealed by Health and Medicines Act 1988 (c. 49, SIF 113:2), s. 25(2), Sch. 3



*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

*Further provisions as to payments by patients for health service accommodation and services*

### 63 Hospital accommodation on part payment.

- (1) The Secretary of State may authorise the accommodation described in this section to be made available, [<sup>F585</sup>for patients to such extent as he may determine, and may recover such charges as he may determine in respect of such accommodation and calculate them on any basis that he considers to be the appropriate commercial basis].

The accommodation mentioned above is—

- (a) in single rooms or small wards which is not for the time being needed by any patient on medical grounds;
- (b) at any health service hospital or group of hospitals, or a hospital in which patients are treated under arrangements made by virtue of section 23 above, or at the health service hospitals in a particular area or a hospital in which patients are so treated.

[<sup>F586</sup>(1C) References in subsection (1) above to a health service hospital do not include references to a hospital vested in an NHS trust.]

(2) ..... <sup>F587</sup>

#### Textual Amendments

**F585** Words substituted by [Health and Medicines Act 1988 \(c. 49, SIF 113:2\), s. 7\(9\)\(a\)](#)

**F586** [S. 63\(1C\)](#) inserted by [National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990 \(c. 19, SIF 113:2\), s. 66\(1\), Sch. 9 para. 18\(3\)](#)

**F587** [S. 63\(2\)](#) repealed by [Health and Medicines Act 1988 \(c. 49, SIF 113:2\), ss. 7\(9\)\(b\), 25\(2\), Sch. 3](#)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C50** [S. 63](#): transfer of functions (E.) (1.4.2001) by [S.I. 2001/747, regs. 2\(1\), 3, 4, Sch. 1](#)

### 64 Expenses payable by remuneratively employed resident patients.

The Secretary of State may require any person—

- (a) who is a resident patient for whom the Secretary of State provides services under this Act; and
- (b) who is absent during the day for the purpose of engaging in remunerative employment from the hospital where he is a patient,

to pay such part of the cost of his maintenance in the hospital and any incidental cost as may seem reasonable to the Secretary of State having regard to the amount of that person's remuneration, and the Secretary of State may recover the amount so required.

### [<sup>F588</sup>65 Accommodation and services for private patients.

- (1) [<sup>F589</sup>Subject to the provisions of this section, to such extent as they may determine, a [<sup>F590</sup>[<sup>F591</sup>Strategic Health Authority,] Health Authority or Special Health Authority] may make available at a hospital or hospitals for which they have responsibility accommodation and services], for patients who give undertakings (or for whom undertakings are given) to pay, in respect of the accommodation and services made [<sup>F592</sup>available, such charges as the [<sup>F591</sup>Strategic Health Authority,] Health Authority

*Status:* Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

or Special Health Authority may determine and may make and recover such charges as they may determine in respect of such accommodation and services and calculate those charges on any basis that they consider to be the appropriate commercial basis; but they shall do so only if and to the extent that they are satisfied] that to do so—

- (a) will not to a significant extent interfere with the performance by [<sup>F593</sup>the [<sup>F591</sup>Strategic Health Authority,] Health Authority or Special Health Authority of any function conferred on them under] this Act to provide accommodation or services of any kind; and
- (b) will not to a significant extent operate to the disadvantage of persons seeking or afforded admission or access to accommodation or services at health service hospitals (whether as resident or non-resident patients) otherwise than under this section.

[ Before determining to make any accommodation or services available as mentioned <sup>F594</sup>(1A) in subsection (1) above, a [<sup>F595</sup>[<sup>F591</sup>Strategic Health Authority,] Health Authority or Special Health Authority] shall consult organisations representative of the interests of persons likely to be affected by the determination.]

- (2) [<sup>F596</sup>A [<sup>F591</sup>Strategic Health Authority,] Health Authority or Special Health Authority] may allow accommodation and services [<sup>F597</sup>which are made available under subsection (1) above to be so made available] in connection with treatment, in pursuance of arrangements made by a medical practitioner or dental practitioner serving (whether in an honorary or paid capacity) on the staff of a health service hospital for the treatment of private patients of that practitioner.

<sup>F598</sup>(3) . . . . .

[ References in the preceding provisions of this section to a health service hospital do <sup>F599</sup>(4) not include references to a hospital vested in an NHS trust.]]

#### Textual Amendments

- F588** S. 65 substituted for ss. 65 and 66 by [Health and Medicines Act 1988 \(c. 49, SIF 113:2\)](#), [s. 7\(10\)](#)
- F589** Words beginning with “Subject” substituted (1.4.1991) for words beginning with “If” by [National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990 \(c. 19, SIF 113:2\)](#), [s. 25\(2\)\(a\)](#)
- F590** Words in s. 65(1) substituted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), [Sch. 1 para. 38\(a\)\(i\)](#) (with Sch. 2 para. 6)
- F591** Words in s. 65 inserted (1.10.2002) by [National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 \(c. 17\)](#), ss. 2(5), 42(3), [Sch. 1 Pt. 1 para. 20](#); S.I. 2002/2478, [art. 3\(1\)\(c\)](#)
- F592** Words in s. 65(1) substituted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), [Sch. 1 Pt. 1 para. 38\(a\)\(ii\)](#) (with Sch. 2 para. 6)
- F593** Words in s. 65(1)(a) substituted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), [Sch. 1 Pt. 1 para. 38\(a\)\(iii\)](#) (with Sch. 2 para. 6)
- F594** S. 65(1A) inserted (1.4.1991) by [National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990 \(c. 19, SIF 113:2\)](#), [s. 25\(3\)](#)
- F595** Words in s. 65(1A) substituted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), [Sch. 1 para. 38\(b\)](#) (with Sch. 2 para. 6)
- F596** Words in s. 65(2) substituted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), [Sch. 1 para. 38\(c\)](#) (with Sch. 2 para. 6)
- F597** Words in s. 65(2) substituted (1.4.1991) by [National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990 \(c. 19, SIF 113:2\)](#), [s. 25\(4\)\(b\)](#)
- F598** S. 65(3) repealed (1.4.2000) by 1999 c. 8, s. 65, [Sch. 5](#); S.I. 2000/1041, [art. 2\(d\)](#), [Sch.](#)
- F599** S. 65(4) added by [National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990 \(c. 19, SIF 113:2\)](#), s. 66(1), [Sch. 9 para. 18\(4\)](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C51** S. 65(1): by [National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990 \(c.19, SIF 113:2\)](#), s. 25(2)(b) it is provided (1.4.1991) that for any reference to the Secretary of State in the words beginning “for patients who” and ending “to do so” preceding para. (a) there shall be substituted a reference to the District Health Authority or Special Health Authority, as the case may require.

**66A** ..... **F600**

**Textual Amendments**

**F600** S. 66A repealed by [Health and Medicines Act 1988 \(c. 49, SIF 113:2\)](#), s. 25(2), **Sch. 3**

**67—** ..... **F601**  
**71.**

**Textual Amendments**

**F601** Ss. 6(1)(2)(6)(7), 30(2), 59, 60, 67–71, 73–76, Sch. 4 para. 1, Sch. 15 paras. 11, 41, 68—70 repealed by [Health Services Act 1980 \(c. 53, SIF 113:2\)](#), **Sch. 7**

*Use by practitioners of health service facilities for private Practice*

**72 Permission for use of facilities in private practice.**

- (1) A person to whom this section applies who wishes to use any relevant health service accommodation or facilities for the purpose of providing medical, dental, pharmaceutical, ophthalmic or chiropody services to non-resident private patients may apply in writing to the Secretary of State for permission under this section.
- (2) Any application for permission under this section must specify—
  - (a) which of the relevant health service accommodation or facilities the applicant wishes to use for the purpose of providing services to such patients; and
  - (b) which of the kinds of services mentioned in subsection (1) above he wishes the permission to cover.
- (3) On receiving an application under this section the Secretary of State—
  - (a) shall consider whether anything for which permission is sought would interfere with the giving of full and proper attention to persons seeking or afforded access otherwise than as private patients to any services provided under this Act; and
  - (b) shall grant the permission applied for unless in his opinion anything for which permission is sought would so interfere.
- (4) Any grant of permission under this section shall be on such terms (including terms as to the payment of charges for the use of the relevant health service accommodation or facilities pursuant to the permission) as the Secretary of State may from time to time determine.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (5) The persons to whom this section applies are—
- (a) persons of any of the following descriptions who provide services under Part II of this Act, namely, medical practitioners, dental practitioners, registered pharmacists, and ophthalmic . . . <sup>F602</sup> opticians; and
  - (b) other persons who provide pharmaceutical or ophthalmic services under Part II; and
  - (c) chiropodists who provide services under this Act at premises where services are provided under Part II.
- (6) In this section—
- (a) “relevant health service accommodation or facilities”, in relation to a person to whom this section applies, means any accommodation or facilities available at premises provided by the Secretary of State by virtue of this Act, being accommodation or facilities which that person is for the time being authorised to use for purposes of Part II; or
  - (b) in the case of a person to whom this section applies by virtue of paragraph (c) of subsection (5) above, accommodation or facilities which that person is for the time being authorised to use for purposes of this Act at premises where services are provided under Part II.

**Textual Amendments**

**F602** Words repealed by [Health and Social Security Act 1984 \(c. 48, SIF 113:1\)](#), s. 24, [Sch. 8 Pt. I](#)

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C52** [S. 72\(1\)\(3\)\(4\)](#): transfer of functions (E.) (1.4.2001) by [S.I. 2001/747](#), regs. 2(1), 3, 4, [Sch. 1](#)

73— ..... <sup>F603</sup>  
76.

**Textual Amendments**

**F603** [Ss. 6\(1\)\(2\)\(6\)\(7\), 30\(2\), 59, 60, 67–71, 73–76, Sch. 4 para. 1, Sch. 15 paras. 11, 41, 68–70](#) repealed by [Health Services Act 1980 \(c. 53, SIF 113:2\)](#), [Sch. 7](#)

*Regulations as to certain charges*

**77 Charges for drugs, medicines or appliances, or pharmaceutical services.**

- (1) Regulations may provide for the making and recovery in such manner as may be prescribed of such charges as may be prescribed in respect of—
- (a) the supply under this Act (otherwise than under Part II) of drugs, medicines or appliances (including the replacement and repair of those appliances),
  - (b) such of the pharmaceutical services referred to in Part II as may be prescribed,
- and paragraph (a) and (b) of this subsection may include the supply of substances and appliances mentioned in paragraph (b) of section 5(1) above.

*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (2) Regulations under subsection (1) above may provide for the grant, on payment of such sums as may be prescribed by those regulations, of certificates conferring on the persons to whom the certificates are granted exemption from charges otherwise exigible under the regulations in respect of drugs, medicines and appliances supplied during such period as may be prescribed, and different sums may be so prescribed in relation to different periods.
- (3) The additional provisions of paragraphs 1 and 4 of Schedule 12 to this Act have effect in relation to this section.

## 78 Charges for dental or optical appliances.

- (1) Regulations may provide for the making and recovery in such manner as may be prescribed of charges of such amounts as are mentioned in sub-paragraph (1) of paragraph 2 of Schedule 12 to this Act, in respect of the supply under the Act of such . . . <sup>F604</sup>optical appliances as are mentioned in that sub-paragraph.
- [<sup>F605</sup>(1A) Regulations may provide for the making and recovery in such manner as may be prescribed of charges of amounts calculated in accordance with section 79A below in respect of the supply under this Act of dentures and other dental appliances of prescribed descriptions.]
- (2) If the Secretary of State, after consultation with the university associated with any hospital providing facilities for clinical dental teaching, is satisfied that it is expedient in the interests of dental training or education that the charges imposed by subsection [<sup>F606</sup>(1A)] above should be remitted in the case of dental services provided at that hospital, either generally or subject to limitations or conditions, he may by order provide for that purpose.
- Any order made under this subsection may be revoked or varied by a subsequent order made by the Secretary of State after such consultation as is mentioned above.
- (3) The additional provisions of paragraphs 2 and 5 of Schedule 12 have effect in relation to this section.

### Textual Amendments

**F604** Words repealed by [Health and Medicines Act 1988 \(c. 49, SIF 113:2\), s. 25\(2\), Sch. 3](#)

**F605** [S. 78\(1A\)](#) inserted by [Health and Medicines Act 1988 \(c. 49, SIF 113:2\), s. 11\(1\)](#)

**F606** Word substituted by [Health and Medicines Act 1988 \(c. 49, SIF 113:2\), s. 25\(1\), Sch. 2 para. 5](#)

## 79 Charges for dental treatment.

- (1) A charge of [<sup>F607</sup>an amount calculated in accordance with section 79A below] may be made and recovered, in such manner as may be prescribed, in respect of any services provided as part of the general dental services under Part II of this Act, not being—
- (a) . . . . . <sup>F608</sup>
  - (b) the repair of appliances other than prescribed appliances;
  - (c) the arrest of bleeding; . . . <sup>F608</sup>
  - (d) . . . . . <sup>F608</sup>

The additional provisions of paragraphs 3 and 5 of Schedule 12 have effect in relation to this subsection.

*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (2) Regulations may provide that, in the case of such special dental treatment as may be prescribed, being treatment provided as part of the general dental services, such charges as may be prescribed may be made and recovered by the person providing the services.

#### Textual Amendments

**F607** Words substituted by [Health and Medicines Act 1988 \(c. 49, SIF 113:2\)](#), **s. 11(2)**

**F608** [S. 79\(a\)\(d\)](#) and the word “or” immediately preceding (d) repealed by [Health and Medicines Act 1988 \(c. 49, SIF 113:2\)](#), [s. 25\(2\)](#), **Sch. 3**

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C53** By [Health and Medicines Act 1988 \(c. 49, SIF 113:2\)](#), **s. 11(7)** it is provided that [s. 79\(1\)](#) shall cease to have effect so far as it provides that a charge may not be authorised for the clinical examination of a patient and any report on that examination

### [<sup>F609</sup>79A Calculation of charges for dental appliances and treatment.

#

- (1) Subject to the following provisions of this section, regulations may make such provision as to the amount of any charge—
- authorised by section 78(1A) above for the supply of dentures or other dental appliances; or
  - authorised by section 79 above for the provision of services, as appears to the Secretary of State to be appropriate.
- (2) Without prejudice to the generality of subsection (1) above, regulations may provide that any charge which is so authorised in respect of appliances or services supplied or provided under Part II of this Act—
- shall be of an amount equal—
    - to the practitioner’s remuneration in respect of the supply or provision; or
    - to any part of that remuneration; or
  - shall be otherwise calculated by reference to that remuneration.
- (3) Without prejudice to the generality of subsection (1) above, regulations may provide that any charge which is authorised in respect of appliances supplied otherwise than under Part II of this Act—
- shall be of an amount equal—
    - to the remuneration a practitioner would receive for a supply under that Part of this Act of equivalent appliances, or
    - to any part of such remuneration; or
  - shall be otherwise calculated by reference to such remuneration.
- (4) The charge shall not exceed the amount which the Secretary of State considers to be the cost to the health service of the supply or provision.
- (5) In this section “cost to the health service” does not include—
- any fee in respect of a visit by a practitioner to a patient; or



*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) any fee or part of a fee payable by a patient in pursuance of regulations under section 79(2) above or section 81(b) or 82(b) below.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F609** S. 79A inserted by [Health and Medicines Act 1988 \(c. 49, SIF 113:2\)](#), **s. 11(3)**

### 80 Charges for designated facilities.

Regulations may provide for the making and recovery of charges in respect of facilities designated by the regulations as facilities provided in pursuance of paragraph (d) or paragraph (e) of section 3(1) above.

### 81 Charges for more expensive supplies.

Regulations may provide for the making and recovery of such charges as may be prescribed—

- (a) by the Secretary of State [<sup>F610</sup>or an NHS trust] in respect of the supply by him [<sup>F611</sup>or, as the case may be, by the trust] of any appliance or vehicle which is, at the request of the person supplied, of a more expensive type than the prescribed type, or in respect of the replacement or repair of any such appliance, or the replacement of any such vehicle, or the taking of any such action in relation to the vehicle as is mentioned in paragraph 1 of Schedule 2 to this Act;
- (b) by persons providing [<sup>F612</sup>personal dental services in accordance with section 28C arrangements or] general dental services . . . [<sup>F613</sup>in respect of the supply, as part of those services, of any dental . . . [<sup>F613</sup>appliance which is, at the request of the person supplied, of a more expensive type than the prescribed type or in respect of the replacement or repair of any such appliance.

#### Textual Amendments

**F610** Words inserted by [National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990 \(c. 19, SIF 113:2\)](#), s. 5(8), **Sch. 2 para. 22(a)**

**F611** Words inserted by [National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990 \(c. 19, SIF 113:2\)](#), s. 5(8), **Sch. 2 para. 22(b)**

**F612** Words in s. 81(b) inserted (1.10.1998) 1997 c. 46, s. 41(10), **Sch. 2 Pt. I para. 16**; S.I. 1998/1998, art. 2(2), **Schs. 1 2**

**F613** Words repealed by [Health and Social Security Act 1984 \(c. 48, SIF 113:1\)](#), s. 24, **Sch. 8 Pt. I**

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C54** S. 81: transfer of functions (E.) (1.4.2001) by S.I. 2001/747, regs. 2(1), 3, 4, **Sch. 1**

### 82 Charges for repairs and replacements in certain cases.

Regulations may provide for the making and recovery of such charges as may be prescribed—

- (a) by the Secretary of State [<sup>F614</sup>or an NHS trust] in respect of the replacement or repair of any appliance or vehicle supplied by him [<sup>F615</sup>or, as the case may be, by the trust], or

**Status:** Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) by persons providing [<sup>F616</sup>personal dental services in accordance with section 28C arrangements or] general dental services . . . <sup>F617</sup> in respect of the replacement or repair of any dental . . . <sup>F617</sup> appliance supplied as part of those services,

if it is determined in the prescribed manner that the replacement or repair is necessitated by an act or omission of the person supplied or (if the act or omission occurred when the person supplied was under 16 years of age) of the person supplied or of the person having charge of him when the act or omission occurred.

#### Textual Amendments

**F614** Words inserted by National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990 (c. 19, SIF 113:2), s. 5(8), **Sch. 2 para. 22(a)**

**F615** Words inserted by National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990 (c. 19, SIF 113:2), s. 5(8), **Sch. 2 para. 22(b)**

**F616** Words in s. 82(b) inserted (1.10.1998) by 1997 c. 46, s. 41(10), **Sch. 2 Pt. I para. 17**, S.I. 1998/1998, art. 2(2), Schs. 1, 2

**F617** Words repealed by Health and Social Security Act 1984 (c. 48, SIF 113:1), s. 24, **Sch. 8 Pt. I**

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C55** S. 82: transfer of functions (E.) (1.4.2001) by S.I. 2001/747, regs. 2(1), 3, 4, **Sch. 1**

### 83 Sums otherwise payable to those providing services.

Regulations made—

- (a) under sections 77 to 79 and under sections 81 and 82 above providing for the making and recovery of charges in respect of any services, may provide for the reduction of the sums which would otherwise be payable by [<sup>F618</sup>a Health Authority or Special Health Authority] to the persons by whom those services are provided by the amount of the charges authorised by the regulations in respect of those services;
- [<sup>F619</sup>(b) for the purposes of section 78(1A) in relation to appliances provided as part of—
- (i) general dental services, or
  - (ii) personal dental services provided in accordance with section 28C arrangements,
- may provide for the reduction of the sums which would otherwise be payable by a [<sup>F620</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority to the persons by whom those services are provided by the amount of the charges authorised by section 78(1A) in respect of those appliances.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F618** Words in s. 83(a) substituted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), **Sch. 1 Pt. I para. 39** (with Sch. 2 para. 6)

**F619** S. 83(b) substituted (1.10.1998) by 1997 c. 46, s. 41(10), **Sch. 2 Pt. I para. 18**; S.I. 1998/1998, art. 2(2), Schs. 1, 2

**F620** Words in s. 83 inserted (2.9.2002 for E. and 1.10.2002 for W.) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), **Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 31**; S.I. 2002/2202, **art. 3(b)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(d)**

*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### **[<sup>F621</sup>83A Remission and repayment of charges and payment of travelling expenses.**

- (1) Regulations may provide in relation to prescribed descriptions of persons—
  - (a) for the remission or repayment of the whole or any part of any charges which would otherwise be payable by them in pursuance of section 77(1) above, section 78(1) [<sup>F622</sup>or (1A)] above or section 79 above [<sup>F623</sup>or section 20 of the National Health Service (Primary Care) Act 1997]; and
  - (b) for the payment by the Secretary of State [<sup>F624</sup>or an NHS trust] in such cases as may be prescribed of travelling expenses (including the travelling expenses of a companion) incurred or to be incurred for the purpose of their availing themselves of any services provided under this Act [<sup>F624</sup>and]
    - [<sup>F625</sup>(ba) for the reimbursement by a Primary Care Trust to an NHS trust and, in such cases as may be prescribed, to a Health Authority or another Primary Care Trust, of payments made by virtue of exercising the functions conferred under paragraph (b) above; and]
    - [<sup>F626</sup>(c) for the reimbursement by a [<sup>F627</sup>Health Authority] to an NHS trust and, in such cases as may be prescribed to another [<sup>F627</sup>Health Authority], [<sup>F628</sup>of such payments.]].
- (2) Descriptions of persons may be prescribed for the purposes of paragraph (a) or (b) of subsection (1) above by reference to any criterion and, without prejudice to the generality of this subsection, by reference to any of the following criteria—
  - (a) their age;
  - (b) the fact that a prescribed person or a prescribed body accepts them as suffering from a prescribed medical condition;
  - (c) the fact that a prescribed person or a prescribed body accepts that a prescribed medical condition from which they suffer arose in prescribed circumstances;
  - (d) their receipt of benefit in money or in kind under any enactment or their entitlement to receive any such benefit;
  - (e) the receipt of any such benefit by other persons satisfying prescribed conditions or the entitlement of other persons satisfying prescribed conditions to receive such benefits; and
  - (f) the relationship, as calculated in accordance with the regulations by a prescribed person, between their resources and their requirements.
- (3) Regulations under this section may direct how a person's resources and requirements are to be calculated and, without prejudice to the generality of this subsection, may direct that they shall be calculated—
  - (a) by a method set out in the regulations;
  - (b) by a method described by reference to a method of calculating or estimating income or capital specified in an enactment other than this section or in an instrument made under an Act of Parliament or by reference to such a method but subject to prescribed modifications;
  - (c) by reference to an amount applicable for the purposes of a payment under an Act of Parliament or an instrument made under an Act of Parliament; or
  - (d) by reference to the person's being or having been entitled to payment under an Act of Parliament or an instrument made under an Act of Parliament.
- (4) Regulations under this section which refer to an Act of Parliament or an instrument made under an Act of Parliament may direct that the reference is to be construed as a reference to that Act or instrument—
  - (a) as it has effect at the time when the regulations are made; or

**Status:** Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

(b) both as it has effect at that time and as amended subsequently.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F621** S. 83A inserted by Social Security Act 1988 (c. 7, SIF 113:1), s. 14(1)
- F622** Words inserted by Health and Medicines Act 1988 (c. 49, SIF 113:2), s. 25(1), Sch. 2 para. 6
- F623** Words in s. 83A(1)(a) inserted (29.9.1998) by S.I. 1998/2385, art. 2
- F624** Words inserted and at the end of the paragraph the word “and” added by National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990 (c. 19, SIF 113:2), s. 66(1), Sch. 9 para. 18(5)(a)
- F625** S. 83A(ba) inserted (2.9.2002 for E. and 1.10.2002 for W.) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 32(a); S.I. 2002/2202, art. 3(b); S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(d)
- F626** S. 83A(c) inserted by National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990 (c. 19, SIF 113:2), s. 66(1), Sch. 9 para. 18(5)(b)
- F627** Words in s. 83A(1)(c) substituted (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, s. 2(1)(3), Sch. 1 Pt. I para. 40 (with Sch. 2 para. 6)
- F628** Words s. 83A(c) substituted (2.9.2002 for E. and 1.10.2002 for W.) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 32(b); S.I. 2002/2202, art. 3(b); S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(d)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C56** S. 83A(1)(b)(c): functions of local authority not to be responsibility of an executive of the authority (1.4.2000) by virtue of S.I. 2000/695, reg. 3(2)(a), Sch. 1
- C57** S. 83A(1)(b): transfer of functions (E.) (1.4.2000) by S.I. 2001/747, regs. 2(1), 3, 4, Sch. 1

### *Inquiries, and default and emergency powers*

#### 84 Inquiries.

- (1) The Secretary of State may cause an inquiry to be held in any case where he deems it advisable to do so in connection with any matter arising under this Act [<sup>F629</sup>or Part I of the National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990][<sup>F630</sup>or Part I of the Health Act 1999 (with the exception of sections 33 to 38)].
- (2) For the purpose of any such inquiry (but subject to subsection (3) below) the person appointed to hold the inquiry—
- may by summons require any person to attend, at a time and place stated in the summons, to give evidence or to produce any documents in his custody or under his control which relate to any matter in question at the inquiry; and
  - may take evidence on oath, and for that purpose administer oaths, or may, instead of administering an oath, require the person examined to make a solemn affirmation.
- (3) Nothing in this section—
- requires a person, in obedience to a summons under the section, to attend to give evidence or to produce any documents unless the necessary expenses of his attendance are paid or tendered to him; or
  - empowers the person holding the inquiry to require the production of the title, or of any instrument relating to the title, of any land not being the property of a local authority.

*Status:* Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (4) Any person who refuses or deliberately fails to attend in obedience to a summons under this section, or to give evidence, or who deliberately alters, suppresses, conceals, destroys, or refuses to produce any book or other document which he is required or is liable to be required to produce for the purposes of this section, shall be liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding [<sup>F631</sup>level 3 on the standard scale] or to imprisonment for a term not exceeding 6 months, or to both.
- (5) Where the Secretary of State causes an inquiry to be held under this section—
- (a) the costs incurred by him in relation to the inquiry (including such reasonable sum not exceeding £30 a day as he may determine for the services of any officer engaged in the inquiry) shall be paid by such local authority or party to the inquiry as he may direct, and
  - (b) he may cause the amount of the costs so incurred to be certified, and any amount so certified and directed to be paid by any authority or person shall be recoverable from that authority or person by the Secretary of State summarily as a civil debt.

No local authority shall be ordered to pay costs under this subsection in the case of any inquiry unless it is a party to that inquiry.

- (6) Where the Secretary of State causes an inquiry to be held under this section he may make orders—
- (a) as to the costs of the parties at the inquiry, and
  - (b) as to the parties by whom the costs are to be paid,
- and every such order may be made a rule of the High Court on the application of any party named in the order.

#### Textual Amendments

**F629** Words added by [National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990 \(c. 19, SIF 113:2\)](#), s. 66(1), [Sch. 9 para. 18\(6\)](#)

**F630** Words in s. 84(1) inserted (1.11.1999) by [S.I. 1999/2795](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(2\)](#)

**F631** Words substituted by virtue of [Criminal Justice Act 1982 \(c. 48, SIF 39:1\)](#), [ss. 38, 46](#)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C58** [S. 84\(2\)–\(4\)](#) applied with modifications by [S.I. 1979/1644](#), [reg. 10\(8\)](#)

[S. 84\(2\)–\(4\)](#) applied with modifications (30.1.1998) by [S.I. 1997/2817](#), [reg. 19\(1\)\(2\)](#), [Sch. 4](#)

### [<sup>F632</sup>84A Intervention orders

- (1) If the Secretary of State—
- (a) is of the opinion that a body to which this section applies is not performing one or more of its functions adequately or at all, or that there are significant failings in the way the body is being run, and
  - (b) is satisfied that it is appropriate for him to intervene under this section,
- he may make an order under this section in respect of the body (an “intervention order”).

- (2) The bodies to which this section applies are—

[ Strategic Health Authorities,]  
<sup>F633</sup>(za)

**Status:** Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) Health Authorities,
  - (b) Special Health Authorities,
  - (c) NHS trusts,
  - (d) Primary Care Trusts.
  - [ Local Health Boards.]
  - <sup>F634</sup>(e)
- (3) An intervention order may make any provision authorised by section 84B below (including any combination of such provisions).]

#### Textual Amendments

**F632** S. 84A inserted (1.8.2001 for E. and otherwise *prosp.*) by 2001 c. 15, ss. 13(1), 70(2) (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)); S.I. 2001/2804 art. 2(1)(a)(2)

**F633** S. 84A(2)(za) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 1(3), 42(3), Sch. 1 Pt. 1 para 21; S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(c)

**F634** S. 84A(2)(e) inserted (10.10.2002 for W. and otherwise *prosp.*) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 6(2), 42(3), Sch. 5 para. 16; S.I. 2002/2532, art. 2

#### <sup>F635</sup>84B Intervention orders: effect

- (1) In this section—
- (a) “member” means a member of a [<sup>F636</sup>Strategic Health Authority,] Health Authority, Special Health Authority [<sup>F637</sup>, Primary Care Trust or Local Health Board], or a member of the board of directors of an NHS trust,
  - (b) “employee member” means a member of a [<sup>F636</sup>Strategic Health Authority,] Health Authority, Special Health Authority [<sup>F638</sup>, Primary Care Trust or Local Health Board] who is an officer of the Authority or Trust, or an executive director of an NHS trust.
- (2) An intervention order may provide for the removal from office of—
- (a) all the members, or
  - (b) those specified in the order,
- and for their replacement with individuals specified in or determined in accordance with the order (who need not be the same in number as the removed individuals).
- (3) An intervention order may provide for the suspension (either wholly, or in respect only of powers and duties specified in or determined in accordance with the order) of—
- (a) all the members, or
  - (b) those specified in the order,
- and for the powers of the suspended members to be exercised, and their duties performed, during their suspension by individuals specified in or determined in accordance with the order (who need not be the same in number as the suspended individuals).
- (4) The powers and duties referred to in subsection (3) are, in the case of an employee member, only those which he has in his capacity as a member.
- (5) An intervention order may contain directions to the body to which it relates to secure that a function of the body specified in the directions—



**Status:** Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) is performed, to the extent specified in the directions, on behalf of the body and at its expense, by such person as is specified in the directions, and
  - (b) is so performed in such a way as to achieve such objectives as are so specified, and the directions may require that any contract or other arrangement made by the body with that person contains such terms and conditions as may be so specified.
- (6) If the person referred to in subsection (5)(a) is a body referred to in section 84A(2) above, the functions of that body include the performance of the functions specified in the directions under subsection (5); and, if that body is [<sup>F639</sup>a Strategic Health Authority or] a Health Authority, are primary functions of the Authority.
- (7) Subsection (8) applies in relation to any provision—
- (a) in this Act, the National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990 (c. 19), or the Health and Social Care Act 2001; or
  - (b) in any order or regulations made, or directions given, under any of those Acts, which relates to the membership of the body to which an intervention order relates (or of its board of directors, in the case of an NHS trust), or relates to its procedure.
- (8) If the Secretary of State considers it appropriate, the intervention order may, in relation to any such provision specified in the order, provide—
- (a) that it is not to apply in relation to the body while the order remains in force; or
  - (b) that it is to apply in relation to the body, while the order remains in force, with modifications specified in the order.
- (9) An intervention order may contain such supplementary directions to the body to which it relates as the Secretary of State considers appropriate for the purpose of giving full effect to the order.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F635** S. 84B inserted (1.8.2001 for E. and otherwise *prosp.*) by 2001 c. 15, ss. 13(1), 70(2) (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)); S.I. 2001/2804 art. 2(1)(a)
- F636** Words in s. 84B(1)(a)(b) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 1(3), 42(3), **Sch. 1 Pt. 1 para. 22(a)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(c)**
- F637** Words in s. 84B(1)(a)(b) substituted (10.10.2002 for W. and otherwise *prosp.*) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 6(2), 42(3), **Sch. 5 para. 17**; S.I. 2002/2532, {art. 2}
- F638** Words in s. 84B(1)(a)(b) substituted (10.10.2002 for W. and otherwise *prosp.*) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 6(2), 42(3), **Sch. 5 para. 17**; S.I. 2002/2532, {art. 2}
- F639** Words in s. 84B(6) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 1(3), 42(3), **Sch. 1 Pt. 1 para. 22(b)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(c)**

## 85 Default powers.

- (1) Where the Secretary of State is of opinion, on complaint or otherwise, that—
- [<sup>F640</sup>(za) a Strategic Health Authority;]
  - [<sup>F641</sup>(a) a Health Authority;
  - (b) a Special Health Authority;
  - [ a Primary Care Trust]]
  - <sup>F642</sup>(bb)

**Status:** Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

[<sup>F643</sup>(bbb) a Local Health Board;]

(c) an NHS trust;

(d) <sup>F644</sup>

or

(e) the Dental Practice Board;

have failed to carry out any functions conferred or imposed on them by or under this Act [<sup>F645</sup> or Part I of the National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990][<sup>F646</sup> or Part I of the Health Act 1999], or have in carrying out those functions failed to comply with any regulations or directions relating to those functions, he may after such inquiry as he may think fit make an order declaring them to be in default.

(2) [<sup>F647</sup>The members of the body in default shall] forthwith vacate their office, and the order—

(a) shall provide for the appointment, in accordance with the provisions of this Act, of new members of the body; and

(b) may contain such provisions as seem to the Secretary of State expedient for authorising any person to act in the place of the body in question pending the appointment of new members.

(3) ..... <sup>F648</sup>

(5) An order made under this section may contain such supplementary and incidental provisions as appear to the Secretary of State to be necessary or expedient, including—

(a) provision for the transfer to the Secretary of State of property and liabilities of the body in default; and

(b) where any such order is varied or revoked by a subsequent order, provision in the revoking order or a subsequent order for the transfer to the body in default of any property or liabilities acquired or incurred by the Secretary of State in discharging any of the functions transferred to him.

#### Textual Amendments

**F640** S. 85(1)(za) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 1(3), 42(3), {Sch. 1 Pt. para. 23}; S.I. 2002/2478, {art. 3(1)(c)}

**F641** S. 85(1)(a)-(e) substituted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) for s. 85(1)(a)-(g) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), Sch. 1 para. 41 (with Sch. 2 para. 6)

**F642** S. 85(bb) inserted (4.1.2000 for E. and otherwise *prosp.*) by 1999 c. 8, ss. 65, 67, Sch. 4 para. 25; S.I. 1999/2342, art. 2(3)(a), Sch. 2

**F643** S. 85(1)(bbb) inserted (10.10.2002 for W. and otherwise *prosp.*) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 6(2), 42(3), Sch. 5 para. 18; S.I. 2002/2532, art. 2, Sch.

**F644** S. 85(1)(d) repealed (1.4.2002) by 2001 c. 15, ss. 67, 70(2), Sch. 5 Pt. 1 para. 5(9), Sch. 6 Pt. 1 (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)); S.I. 2002/1095, art. 2(3), Sch.

**F645** Words inserted by National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990 (c. 19, SIF 113:2), s. 66(1), Sch. 9 para. 18(7)(a)

**F646** Words in s. 85 inserted (1.11.1999) by S.I. 1999/2795, art. 2(1)(3)

**F647** Words substituted by National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990 (c. 19, SIF 113:2), s. 66(1), Sch. 9 para. 18(7)(b)

**F648** S. 85(3)(4) repealed by National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990 (c. 19, SIF 113:2), s. 66(1)(2), Sch. 9 para. 18(7)(c), Sch. 10

*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C59** S. 85(1) amended (15.8.1997) by 1997 c. 46, s. 41(10), **Sch. 2 Pt. I para. 20**; S.I. 1997/1780, art. 2(1), **Sch.**
- C60** S. 85(1) modified (E.) (12.12.2002) by The National Health Service (Local Pharmaceutical Services Etc.) Regulations 2002 (S.I. 2002/2861), **reg. 21**
- C61** S. 85(3)–(5) extended by Mental Health Act 1983 (c. 20, SIF 85), **Ss. 124(2)**, 131(1) (the said s. 124 repealed (prosp.) by National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990 (c.19, SIF 113:2), ss. 66(2), 67(2), **Sch. 10**)

## 86 Emergency powers.

If the Secretary of State—

- (a) considers that by reason of an emergency it is necessary, in order to ensure that a service falling to be provided in pursuance of this Act [<sup>F649</sup>or Part I of the National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990] is provided, to direct that during the period specified by the directions a function conferred on any body or person by virtue of this Act [<sup>F649</sup>or that Part] shall to the exclusion of or concurrently with that body or person be performed by another body or person, then
- (b) he may give directions accordingly <sup>F650</sup> . . .

The powers conferred on the Secretary of State by this section are in addition to any other powers exercisable by him.

#### Textual Amendments

- F649** Words inserted by National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990 (c. 19, SIF 113:2), s. 66(1), **Sch. 9 para. 18(8)**
- F650** Words in s. 86(b) omitted (1.9.1999 for E. and 1.12.1999 for W.) by virtue of 1999 c. 8, s. 67, **Sch. 4 para. 26**; S.I. 1999/2342, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**; S.I. 1999/3184, art. 2(2), **Sch. 2** and repealed (*prosp.*) by 1999 c. 8, ss. 65, 67, **Sch. 5**

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C62** S. 86 amended (1.4.1998 to the extent it relates to pilot schemes under which personal medical services are provided otherwise 1.10.1998) by 1997 c. 46, s. 41(10), **Sch. 2 Pt. I para. 21**; S.I. 1998/631, art. 2(a)(b), **Schs. 1 2** (with arts. 3-5); S.I. 1998/1998, art. 2(2), **Schs. 1 2**
- C63** S. 86 modified (E.) (12.12.2002) The National Health Service (Local Pharmaceutical Services Etc.) Regulations 2002 (S.I. 2002/2861), **reg. 22**

## PART IV

### PROPERTY AND FINANCE

#### *Land and other Property*

## 87 Acquisition, use and maintenance of property.

(1) The Secretary of State may acquire—

- (a) any land, either by agreement or compulsorily,

*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) any other property,  
required by him for the purposes of this Act; and (without prejudice to the generality of paragraph (a) above) land may be so acquired to provide residential accommodation for persons employed for any of those purposes.
- (2) The Secretary of State may use for the purposes of any of the functions conferred on him by this Act any property belonging to him by virtue of this Act, and he has power to maintain all such property.
- (3) A local social services authority may be authorised to purchase land compulsorily for the purposes of this Act by means of an order made by the authority and confirmed by the Secretary of State.
- [<sup>F651</sup>(4) The <sup>M35</sup>Acquisition of Land Act 1981 shall apply to the compulsory purchase of land under this section]
- (5) Section 120(3) of the <sup>M36</sup>Local Government Act 1972 (which relates to the application of Part I of the <sup>M37</sup>Compulsory Purchase Act 1965 where a council are authorised to acquire land by agreement) applies to the acquisition of land by the Secretary of State under this section in like manner as it applies to such acquisition by a council under that section.
- [<sup>F652</sup>(6) Sections 238 and 239 of the Town and Country Planning Act 1990 (use and development of consecrated land and burial grounds) shall apply to consecrated land or, as the case may be, land comprised in a burial ground (within the meaning of section 240 of that Act) which—
- (a) the Secretary of State holds for the purposes of the health service, and
  - (b) has not been the subject of a relevant acquisition (within the meaning of that section) by the Secretary of State,
- as if that land had been the subject of such an acquisition by him for those purposes.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F651** S. 87(4) substituted by [Acquisition of Land Act 1981 \(c. 67, SIF 28:1\), s. 34\(1\), Sch. 4 para. 28](#)

**F652** S. 87(6) substituted by [Planning \(Consequential Provisions\) Act 1990 \(c. 11, SIF 123:1, 2\), s. 4, Sch. 2 para. 40](#)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C64** S. 87(1)(2): transfer of functions (E.) (1.4.2001) by [S.I. 2001/747, regs. 2\(1\), 3, 4, Sch. 1](#)

#### Marginal Citations

**M35** 1981 c. 67(28:1).

**M36** 1972 c. 70(81:1).

**M37** 1965 c. 56(28:1).

## 88 Transferred property free of trusts.

- (1) All property vested in the Secretary of State in consequence of the transfer of that property under section 6 of the <sup>M38</sup>National Health Service Act 1946 (transfer of hospitals) [<sup>F653</sup>is so vested] free of any trust existing immediately before that transfer.
- (2) The Secretary of State may use any such property for the purpose of any of his functions under this Act, but he shall so far as practicable secure that the objects for

*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

which any such property was used immediately before that transfer are not prejudiced by [<sup>F653</sup>the exercise of the power hereby conferred].

#### Textual Amendments

**F653** Words substituted by [Health Services Act 1980 \(c. 53, SIF 113:2\)](#), [Sch. 1, para. 66](#)

#### Marginal Citations

**M38** [1946 c. 81](#).

### 89 Power of voluntary organisations to transfer property.

(1) Notwithstanding anything contained—

- (a) in the constitution or rules of any voluntary organisation formed for the purpose of providing a service of nurses for attendance on the sick in their own homes, or of midwives, or
- (b) in any trust deed or other instrument relating to such organisation or service, any property vested in the organisation or held by any persons on trust for the organisation or service or for any specific purposes connected with the organisation or service may be transferred to the Secretary of State, on such terms as may be agreed between him and the organisation or trustees, with a view to the property being used or held by him for purposes similar to the purposes for which it was previously used or held.

#### Trusts

### 90 Gifts on trust.

—A [<sup>F654</sup>Strategic Health Authority,][<sup>F655</sup>Health Authority or Special Health Authority] has power to accept, hold and administer any property on trust for all or any purposes relating to the health service.

#### Textual Amendments

**F654** Words in s. 90 inserted (1.10.2002) by [National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 \(c. 17\)](#), ss. 1(3), 42(3), [Sch. 1 Pt. 1 para. 24](#); S.I. 2002/2478, [art. 3\(1\)\(c\)](#)

**F655** Words in s. 90 substituted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), [Sch. 1 para. 42](#) (with [Sch. 2 para. 6](#))

### 91 Private trusts for hospitals.

(1) Where—

- (a) the terms of a trust instrument authorise or require the trustees, whether immediately or in the future, to apply any part of the capital or income of the trust property for the purposes of any health service hospital, then
- (b) the trust instrument shall be construed as authorising or (as the case may be) requiring the trustees to apply the trust property to the like extent, and at the like times, for the purpose of making payments, whether of capital or income, to the appropriate hospital authority.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (2) Any sum so paid to the appropriate hospital authority shall, so far as practicable, be applied by them for the purpose specified in the trust instrument.
- (3) In this section “the appropriate hospital authority” means—
- (a) where special trustees are appointed for the hospital, those trustees;
  - <sup>F656</sup>(b) where the hospital is managed by, and trustees have been appointed for, an NHS trust or Primary Care Trust, the trustees,
  - (c) where the hospital is managed by an NHS trust or Primary Care Trust and neither paragraph (a) nor paragraph (b) applies, the NHS trust or (as the case may be) Primary Care Trust,
  - (d) in any other case, the <sup>F657</sup>Strategic Health Authority,] Health Authority or Special Health Authority exercising functions of the Secretary of State in respect of the hospital]
- (4) Nothing in this section applies <sup>F658</sup>to a trust for a special hospital, or] to property transferred under section 24 of the <sup>M39</sup>National Health Service Reorganisation Act 1973.

#### Textual Amendments

- F656** S. 91(3)(b)-(d) substituted for s. 91(3)(aa) to (b) (for E: 1.10.1999 subject to specified exceptions otherwise 4.1.2000; for W: 1.4.2000 subject to specified exceptions otherwise *prosp.*) by 1999 c. 8, ss. 65, 67, **Sch. 4 para. 27(a)**; S.I. 1999/2540, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**; S.I. 1999/2342, art. 2(3), **Sch. 2**; S.I. 2000/1026, art. 2(1), **Sch.**
- F657** Words in s. 91(3)(d) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 1(3), 42(3), **Sch. 1 Pt. 1 para. 25**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(c)**
- F658** Words in s. 91(4) omitted (1.4.2000 for E. otherwise *prosp.*) by virtue of 1999 c. 8, ss. 65, 67, **Sch. 4 para. 27(b)**; S.I. 1999/2793, art. 2(3)(a), **Sch. 3**; and those words repealed (*prosp.*) by 1999 c. 8, ss. 65, 67, **Sch. 5**

#### Marginal Citations

- M39** 1973 c. 32(113:2).

## 92 Further transfers of trust property.

- (1) The Secretary of State may, having regard to any change or proposed change in the arrangements for the administration of a hospital <sup>F659</sup>or other establishment or facility] or in the area or functions of any <sup>F660</sup>Strategic Health Authority,]<sup>F661</sup> Primary Care Trust,]<sup>F662</sup>Health Authority or Special Health Authority], by order provide for the transfer of any trust property <sup>F663</sup>from any relevant health service body to any other relevant health service body.].

<sup>F664</sup>(1A) In this section “relevant health service body” means—

- <sup>F665</sup>(za) [ a Strategic Health Authority;]
- (a) a Health Authority;
- (b) a Special Health Authority;
- (c) an NHS trust <sup>F666</sup>or a Primary Care Trust];
- <sup>F667</sup>(cc) [ a Local Health Board;]



*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (d) special trustees; or
- (e) trustees for an NHS trust [<sup>F666</sup>or a Primary Care Trust].]
- (2) If it appears to the Secretary of State at any time that all the functions of any special trustees should be discharged by [<sup>F668</sup>one or more bodies which are relevant health service bodies by virtue of subsection (1A)(a) to (c) above] then, whether or not there has been any such change as is mentioned in subsection (1) above, he may by order provide for the transfer of all trust property from the special trustees to the [<sup>F669</sup>body or, in such proportions as may be specified in the order, to those bodies].
- (3) Before so acting the Secretary of State shall consult the [<sup>F670</sup>special trustees and other bodies] concerned.
- (4) Where by an order under this section, property is transferred to two or more [<sup>F671</sup>bodies], it shall be apportioned by them in such proportions as they may agree or as may in default of agreement be determined by the Secretary of State, and the order may provide for the way in which the property is to be apportioned.
- (5) Where property is so apportioned, the Secretary of State may by order make any consequential amendments of the trust instrument relating to the property.
- [<sup>F672</sup>(6) If it appears to the Secretary of State at any time that—
- (a) the functions of any special trustees should be discharged by the trustees for an NHS trust, or
- (b) the functions of the trustees for an NHS trust should be discharged by special trustees,
- then, whether or not there has been any such change as is mentioned in subsection (1) above, he may, after consulting the special trustees and the trustees for the NHS trust, by order provide for the transfer of all trust property from or to the special trustees to or from the trustees for the NHS trust.]
- [<sup>F673</sup>(7) Subsection (6) above applies in relation to a Primary Care Trust as it applies in relation to an NHS trust.]

### Textual Amendments

- F659** Words inserted by National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990 (c. 19, SIF 113:2), s. 11(5) (a)
- F660** Words in s. 92(1) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 1(3), 42(3), Sch. 1 Pt. 1 para. 26(a); S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(c)
- F661** Words in s. 92(1) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 33; S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(d)
- F662** Words in s. 92(1) substituted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), Sch. 1 para. 44(a)(i) (with Sch. 2 para. 6)
- F663** Words in s. 92(1) substituted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), Sch. 1 para. 44(a)(ii) (with Sch. 2 para. 6)
- F664** S. 92(1A) inserted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), Sch. 1 para. 44(b) (with Sch. 2 para. 6)
- F665** S. 92(1A)(za) inserted (1.10.2002 for E.W.) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 1(3), 42(3), Sch. 1 Pt. 1 para. 26(b); S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(c)
- F666** Words in s. 92(1A) inserted (4.1.2000 for E. and otherwise *prosp.*) by 1999 c. 8, ss. 65, 67, Sch. 4 para. 28(a); S.I. 1999/2342, art. 2(3), Sch. 2
- F667** S. 92(1A)(cc) inserted (10.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 6(2), 42(3), Sch. 5 para. 19; S.I. 2002/2532, art. 2, Sch.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- F668** Words in s. 92(2) substituted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), **Sch. 1 para. 44(c)(i)** (with Sch. 2 para. 6)
- F669** Words in s. 92(2) substituted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), **Sch. 1 para. 44(c)(ii)** (with Sch. 2 para. 6)
- F670** Words in s. 92(3) substituted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), **Sch. 1 para. 44(d)** (with Sch. 2 para. 6)
- F671** Words in s. 92(4) substituted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), **Sch. 1 para. 44(e)** (with Sch. 2 para. 6)
- F672** S. 92(6) added by National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990 (c. 19, SIF 113:2), **s. 11(5)(d)**
- F673** S. 92(7) inserted (4.1.2000 for E. and otherwise *prosp.*) by 1999 c. 8, ss. 65, 67, **Sch. 4 para. 28(b)**; S.I. 1999/2342, art. 2(3), **Sch. 2**

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C65** S. 92 restricted by Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 (c. 48, SIF 67A), s. 301, **Sch. 6 para. 7(2)**

**93 Trust property previously held for general hospital purposes.**

- (1) This section applies—
- to property transferred under section 23 of the <sup>M40</sup>National Health Service Reorganisation Act 1973 (winding-up of hospital endowments funds), and
  - to property transferred under section 24 of that Act (transfer of trust property from abolished authorities) which immediately before the day appointed for the purposes of that section was, in accordance with any provision contained in or made under section 7 of the <sup>M41</sup>National Health Service Act 1946, applicable for purposes relating to hospital services or relating to some form of research,

and this section continues to apply to the property after any further transfer under section 92 above.

- (2) The person holding the property after the transfer or last transfer shall secure, so far as is reasonably practicable, that the objects of any original endowment and the observance of any conditions attached to that endowment, including in particular conditions intended to preserve the memory of any person or class of persons, are not prejudiced by this Part of this Act, <sup>F674</sup> . . .

In this subsection “original endowment” means a hospital endowment which was transferred under section 7 of that Act of 1946 and from which the property in question is derived.

- (3) Subject to subsection (2) above, the property shall be held on trust for such purposes relating to hospital services (including research), or to any other part of the health service associated with any hospital, as the person holding the property thinks fit.
- (4) Where the person holding the property is a body of special trustees, the power conferred by subsection (3) above shall be exercised as respects the hospitals for which they are appointed.

**Textual Amendments**

- F674** Words in s. 93(2) repealed (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, s. 5(1)(2), **Sch. 3** (with Sch. 2 para. 6)

*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

C66 S. 93(1)(2) extended (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 4(1)(2), 8(1), Sch. 2 para. 5(3) (with Sch. 2 para. 6)

#### Marginal Citations

M40 1973 c. 32(113:2).

M41 1946 c. 81.

### 94 Application of trust property: further provisions.

(1) Any discretion given by a trust instrument to the trustees of property transferred under—

- (a) section 24 of the <sup>M42</sup>National Health Service Reorganisation Act 1973 (transfer of trust property from abolished authorities),
- (b) section 25 of that Act (transfer of trust property held for health services by local health authorities),
- (c) section 92 above,

shall be exercisable by the person to whom the property is so transferred and, subject to section 93 above and the following provisions of this section, the transfer shall not affect the trusts on which property is held.

(2) Where—

- (a) property has been transferred under section 24 of that Act of 1973, and
- (b) any discretion is given by a trust instrument to the trustees to apply the property, or income arising from the property, to such hospital services (including research) as the trustees think fit without any restriction on the kinds of hospital services and without any restriction to one or more specified hospitals,

the discretion shall be enlarged so as to allow the application of the property or (as the case may be) of the income arising from the property, to such extent as the trustees think fit, for any other part of the health service associated with any hospital.

(3) Subsection (2) above shall apply on any subsequent transfer of the property under section 92 above.

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

C67 S. 94(1)(3) extended (E.W.) (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 4(1)(2), 8(1), Sch. 2 para. 5(3) (with Sch. 2 para. 6)

#### Marginal Citations

M42 1973 c. 32(113:2).

### 95 Special trustees for a university or teaching hospital.

(1) The bodies of trustees (in this Act referred to as special trustees) appointed by the Secretary of State under section 29 of the National Health Service Reorganisation Act 1973 [<sup>F675</sup>or] this section shall (subject to section 92 above) hold and administer the property transferred to them under that Act of 1973.

*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

The special trustees so appointed are bodies of trustees appointed for the hospital or hospitals which, immediately before the day appointed for the purposes of section 29 of that Act of 1973, were controlled and managed by a University Hospital Management Committee or a Board of Governors, but excluding—

- (a) a body on whose request an order was made under section 24(2) of that Act of 1973;
  - (b) a preserved Board within the meaning of section 15(6) of that Act of 1973.
- (2) Special trustees have power to accept, hold and administer any property on trust for all or any purposes relating to hospital services (including research), or to any other part of the health service associated with hospitals, being a trust which is wholly or mainly for hospitals for which the special trustees are appointed.
  - (3) The number of trustees for any hospital or hospitals shall be such as the Secretary of State may from time to time determine after consultation with such persons as he considers appropriate.
  - (4) The term of office of any special trustee shall be fixed by the Secretary of State but a special trustee may be removed by the Secretary of State at any time during the special trustee's term of office.

#### Textual Amendments

**F675** Word substituted by [Health Services Act 1980 \(c. 53, SIF 113:2\)](#), [Sch. 1, para. 68](#)

## 96 Trusts: supplementary provisions.

- (1) Any provision in sections 90 to 95 above [<sup>F676</sup>and 96B below] for the transfer of any property includes provision for the transfer of any rights and liabilities arising from that property.

[<sup>F677</sup>(1A) Where any transfer of property by virtue of those sections is of, or includes,—

- (a) land held on lease from a third party, that is to say, a person other than the Secretary of State or a [<sup>F678</sup>Strategic Health Authority,][<sup>F679</sup>Health Authority or Special Health Authority], or
- (b) any other asset leased or hired from a third party or in which a third party has an interest,

the transfer shall be binding on the third party notwithstanding that, apart from this subsection, it would have required his consent or concurrence.]

- (2) Nothing in those sections shall affect any power of Her Majesty, the court (as defined in [<sup>F680</sup>the <sup>M43</sup>Charities Act 1993]) or any other person to alter the trusts of any charity.
- (3) Nothing in section 12 of the <sup>M44</sup>Finance Act 1895 (which requires certain Acts and certain instruments relating to the vesting of property by virtue of an Act to be stamped as conveyances on sale) applies to sections 90 to 95 above [and 96B below] or to an order made in pursuance of any of those sections; and stamp duty shall not be payable on such an order.

*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Textual Amendments

- F676** Words in s. 96(1)(3) inserted (4.1.2000 for E. and otherwise *prosp.*) by 1999 c. 8, ss. 65, 67, **Sch. 4 para. 29**; S.I. 1999/2342, art. 2(3)(a), **Sch. 2**
- F677** S. 96(1A) inserted by National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990 (c. 19, SIF 113:2), **s. 11(6)(b)**
- F678** Words in s. 96(1A)(a) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 1(3), 42(3), **Sch. 1 Pt. 1 para. 27**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(c)**
- F679** Words in s. 96(1A) substituted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), **Sch. 1, Pt. 1 para. 45** (with **Sch. 2 para. 6**)
- F680** Words in s. 96(2) substituted (1.8.1993) by 1993 c. 10, ss. 98(1), 99(1), **Sch. 6 para. 30**

### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C68** S. 96 amended by National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990 (c. 19, SIF 113:2), **s. 11(6)**

### Marginal Citations

- M43** 1993 c. 10.  
**M44** 1895 c. 16(114).

## [<sup>F681</sup>96A Power of health authorities, etc. to raise money, etc., by appeals, collections, etc.

- (1) A [<sup>F682</sup>Strategic Health Authority,]<sup>F683</sup>Health Authority, Special Health Authority]<sup>F684</sup>, Local Health Board]<sup>F685</sup> or NHS trust] shall have power to engage in activities intended to stimulate the giving (whether on trust or otherwise) of money or other property to assist the [<sup>F682</sup>Strategic Health Authority,]<sup>F683</sup>Health Authority, Special Health Authority]<sup>F684</sup>, Local Health Board]<sup>F685</sup> or NHS trust] in providing or improving any services or any facilities or accommodation which is or are or is or are to be provided as part of the health service or to assist them in connection with their functions with respect to research.
- (2) A Board of Governors of a teaching hospital shall, so long as it is a preserved Board by virtue of section 15 of the <sup>M45</sup>National Health Service Reorganisation Act 1973, have the like power in relation to services, facilities or accommodation provided or to be provided at or by the hospital or their functions with respect to research.
- (3) Subject to any directions of the Secretary of State excluding specified descriptions of activity, the activities authorised by this section include public appeals or collections and competitions, entertainments, bazaars, sales of produce or other goods and other similar activities and the activities may involve the use of land, premises or other property held by or for the benefit of the [<sup>F686</sup>Strategic Health Authority,]<sup>F687</sup>Health Authority, Special Health Authority [<sup>F684</sup>, Local Health Board] or NHS trust] exercising the power subject however to any restrictions on the purposes for which trust property may be used.
- (4) Subject to the following provisions of this section, the [<sup>F688</sup>Strategic Health Authority,]<sup>F687</sup>Health Authority, Special Health Authority [<sup>F684</sup>, Local Health Board] or NHS trust] at whose instance property is given in pursuance of this section shall, after defraying out of it any expenses incurred in obtaining it, hold, administer and apply the property on trust for or for the purpose for which it was given.
- (5) Where property is given in pursuance of this section to or on trust for any purposes of a hospital for which special trustees have been appointed, the property may be held, administered and applied by the special trustees instead of by the [<sup>F689</sup>body responsible

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

for the hospital if that body and the special trustees agree; and in this subsection the body responsible for a hospital is,—

- (a) in the case of a hospital vested in a NHS trust, that trust; and
- (b) in any other case, the [<sup>F690</sup>Strategic Health Authority,][<sup>F691</sup>Primary Care Trust or][<sup>F692</sup>Health Authority] exercising functions <sup>F693</sup> . . . of the Secretary of State in respect of the hospital]

[ Where property is given in pursuance of this section on trust for any purposes of an <sup>F694</sup>(5A) NHS trust for which trustees have been appointed under section 11(1) of the National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990, then, if those trustees and the NHS trust agree, the property may be held, administered and applied by those trustees instead of by the NHS trust.]

[ Where property—  
<sup>F695</sup>(5B) (a) is given in pursuance of this section on trust for any purposes of a Primary Care Trust for which trustees have been appointed under section 96B below, and  
(b) those trustees and the Primary Care Trust agree,  
the property may be held, administered and applied by those trustees instead of by the Primary Care Trust.]

(6) Property given in pursuance of this section on trust may be transferred <sup>F696</sup> . . . by order of the Secretary of State under section 92 above in the same circumstances as other trust property may be transferred under that section, and sections 94 and 96 above shall apply as they apply to other trust property transferred under the said section 92.

(7) Where property held by a [<sup>F697</sup>Strategic Health Authority,][<sup>F698</sup>Health Authority, Special Health Authority [<sup>F684</sup>, Local Health Board] or NHS trust] under this section is more than sufficient to enable the purpose for which it was given to be fulfilled the excess shall be applicable, in default of any provision for its application made by the trust or other instrument under or in accordance with which the property comprising the excess was given, for such purposes connected with any of the functions of the authority or Board as the [<sup>F697</sup>Strategic Health Authority,][<sup>F698</sup>Health Authority, Special Health Authority [<sup>F684</sup>, Local Health Board] or NHS trust] think fit.

(8) Where property held by a [<sup>F697</sup>Strategic Health Authority,][<sup>F698</sup>Health Authority, Special Health Authority [<sup>F684</sup>, Local Health Board] or NHS trust] under this section is insufficient to enable the purpose for which it was given to be fulfilled then—

- (a) the [<sup>F697</sup>Strategic Health Authority,][<sup>F698</sup>Health Authority, Special Health Authority [<sup>F684</sup>, Local Health Board] or NHS trust] may apply so much of the capital or income at their disposal as is needed to enable the purpose to be fulfilled subject, however, in the case of trust property, to any restrictions on the purpose for which the trust property may be applied and, in the case of money paid or payable by the Secretary of State <sup>F699</sup> . . . under section 97 below, to any directions he <sup>F699</sup> . . . may give; but
- (b) where the capital or income applicable under paragraph (a) above is insufficient or is not applied to enable the purpose to be fulfilled, the property so held by the [<sup>F697</sup>Strategic Health Authority,][<sup>F698</sup>Health Authority, Special Health Authority [<sup>F684</sup>, Local Health Board] or NHS trust] shall be applicable, in default of any provision for its application made by the trust or other instrument under or in accordance with which the property was given, for such purposes connected with any of the functions of the authority or Board



*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

as the [<sup>F697</sup>Strategic Health Authority,]<sup>F698</sup>Health Authority, Special Health Authority [<sup>F684</sup>, Local Health Board] or NHS trust] think fit.

- (9) Where under subsection (7) or (8) above property becomes applicable for purposes other than that for which it was given the [<sup>F697</sup>Strategic Health Authority,]<sup>F698</sup>Health Authority, Special Health Authority [<sup>F684</sup>, Local Health Board] or NHS trust] shall have regard to the desirability of applying the property for a purpose similar to that for which it was given.
- (10) In this section “special trustees” has the same meaning as in section 95 above and references to the purposes for which trust property may be used or applied are to be taken, in the case of trust property which has been transferred under section 92 above, to include references to those purposes as enlarged by section 94 above.]
- <sup>F700</sup>(11) This section (apart from subsection (5A)) has effect in relation to a Primary Care Trust as it has effect in relation to an NHS trust.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F681** S. 96A inserted by [Health Services Act 1980 \(c. 53, SIF 113:2\), s. 5\(1\)](#)
- F682** Words in s. 96A(1) inserted (1.10.2002) by [National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 \(c. 17\), ss. 1\(3\), 42\(3\), Sch. 1 Pt. 1 para. 28\(a\); S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3\(1\)\(c\)](#)
- F683** Words in s. 96A(1) substituted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), [Sch. 1 para. 46\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 2 para. 6](#))
- F684** Words in s. 96A(1)(3)(4)(7)(8)(9) inserted (1.10.2002 for W., otherwise prosp.) by [National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 \(c. 17\), ss. 6\(2\), 42\(3\), Sch. 5 para. 20; S.I. 2002/2532, art. 2, Sch.](#)
- F685** Words inserted by [National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990 \(c. 19, SIF 113:2\), s. 5\(8\), Sch. 2 para. 23\(1\)](#)
- F686** Words in s. 96A(3) inserted (1.10.2002) by [National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 \(c. 17\), ss. 1\(3\), 42\(3\), Sch. 1 Pt. 1 para. 28\(b\); S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3\(1\)\(c\)](#)
- F687** Words in s. 96A(3)(4) substituted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by virtue of 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), [Sch. 1 para. 46\(b\)](#) (with [Sch. 2 para. 6](#))
- F688** Words in s. 96A(4) inserted (1.10.2002) by [National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 \(c. 17\), ss. 1\(3\), 42\(3\), Sch. 1 Pt. 1 para. 28\(c\); S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3\(1\)\(c\)](#)
- F689** Words and subsections (a)(b) substituted by [National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990 \(c. 19, SIF 113:2\), s. 5\(8\), Sch. 2 para. 23\(3\)](#)
- F690** Words in s. 96A(5)(b) inserted (1.10.2002) by [National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 \(c. 17\), ss. 1\(3\), 42\(3\), Sch. 1 Pt. 1 para. 28\(d\); S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3\(1\)\(c\)](#)
- F691** Words in s. 96A(5)(b) inserted (1.10.2002) by [National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 \(c. 17\), ss. 2\(5\), 42\(3\), Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 34; S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3\(1\)\(d\)](#)
- F692** Words in s. 96A(5)(b) substituted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), [Sch. 1 para. 46\(c\)](#) (with [Sch. 2 para. 6](#))
- F693** Words in s. 96A(5)(b) omitted (1.9.1999 for E. and 1.12.1999 for W.) by virtue of 1999 c. 8, ss. 65, 67, [Sch. 4 para. 30\(2\); S.I. 1999/2342, art. 2\(1\), Sch. 1; S.I. 1999/3184, art. 2\(2\), Sch. 2](#) and are repealed (1.4.2000) by 1999 c. 8, s. 65, [Sch. 5; S.I. 2000/1041, art. 2\(d\), Sch.](#)
- F694** S. 96A(5A) inserted by [National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990 \(c. 19, SIF 113:2\), s. 5\(8\), Sch. 2 para. 23\(4\)](#)
- F695** S. 96A(5B) inserted (4.1.2000 for E. and otherwise *prosp.*) by 1999 c. 8, ss. 65, 67, [Sch. 4 para. 30\(3\); S.I. 1999/2342, art. 2\(3\), Sch. 2](#)
- F696** Words in s. 96A(6) repealed (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, s. 5(1)(2), [Sch. 3](#) (with [Sch. 2 para. 6](#))
- F697** Words in s. 96A(7)(8)(9) inserted (1.10.2002) by [National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 \(c. 17\), ss. 1\(3\), 42\(3\), Sch. 1 Pt. 1 para. 28\(e\); S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3\(1\)\(c\)](#)

**Status:** Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

**F698** Words in s. 96A(7)-(9) substituted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), Sch. 1 para. 46(e), **Sch. 3** (with Sch. 2 para. 6)

**F699** Words in s. 96A(8)(a) repealed (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 5(1)(2), **Sch. 3** (with Sch. 2 para. 6)

**F700** S. 96A(11) inserted (4.1.2000 for E. and otherwise *prosp.*) by 1999 c. 8, ss. 65, 67, **Sch. 4 para. 30(4)**; S.I. 1999/2342, art. 2(3), **Sch. 2**

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C69** S. 96A(10) extended (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 4(1)(2), 8(1), **Sch. 2 para. 5(3)** (with Sch. 2 para. 6)

#### Marginal Citations

**M45** 1973 c. 32(113:2).

### [<sup>F701</sup>96B Trust-funds and trustees for Primary Care Trusts.

- (1) The Secretary of State may by order provide for the appointment of trustees for any Primary Care Trust.
- (2) Trustees for a Primary Care Trust may accept, hold and administer any property on trust—
  - (a) for the general or any specific purposes of the Primary Care Trust (including the purposes of any specific hospital or other establishment or facility which is managed by the trust), or
  - (b) for all or any purposes relating to the health service.
- (3) An order under subsection (1) above may—
  - (a) make provision as to the persons by whom trustees are to be appointed and generally as to the method of their appointment,
  - (b) provide for any appointment to be subject to any conditions specified in the order (including conditions requiring the consent of the Secretary of State),
  - (c) make provision as to the number of trustees to be appointed, including provision under which that number may from time to time be determined by the Secretary of State after consultation with any persons he considers appropriate, and
  - (d) make provision about the term of office of any trustee and his removal from office.
- (4) Where trustees have been appointed for a Primary Care Trust under subsection (1) above, the Secretary of State may by order provide for the transfer of any trust property from the Primary Care Trust to the trustees so appointed.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F701** S. 96B inserted (4.1.2000 for E. and otherwise *prosp.*) by 1999 c. 8, ss. 7, 67; S.I. 1999/2342, art. 2(3), **Sch. 2**

*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## <sup>F702</sup> Companies

### Textual Amendments

**F702** S. 96C and cross-heading inserted (1.8.2001 for E. and otherwise *prosp.*) by 2001 c. 15, ss. 4, 70(2) (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)); S.I. 2001/2804 art. 2(1)(a)

### <sup>F703</sup> 96C Public-private partnerships

- (1) The Secretary of State may form, or participate in forming, companies to provide facilities or services for—
- (a) persons or bodies exercising functions, or otherwise providing services, under this Act; or
  - (b) NHS trusts.
- (2) The Secretary of State may, with a view to securing or facilitating the provision by companies of facilities or services for persons or bodies falling within subsection (1) (a) or (b)—
- (a) invest in the companies (whether by acquiring assets, securities or rights or otherwise), or
  - (b) provide loans and guarantees and make other kinds of financial provision to or in respect of them,
- or both.
- (3) For the purposes of subsections (1) and (2) above it is immaterial that the facilities or services provided or to be provided by the companies in question are not provided or to be provided—
- (a) only to persons or bodies falling within subsection (1)(a) or (b); or
  - (b) to persons or bodies falling within subsection (1)(a) only in their capacities as persons or bodies such as are mentioned in that provision.
- (4) In this section—
- “companies” means companies within the meaning of the Companies Act 1985 (c. 6);
- “facilities” includes the provision of (or of the use of) premises, goods, materials, vehicles, plant or apparatus.
- (5) This section is without prejudice to any powers of the Secretary of State exercisable otherwise than by virtue of this section.]]

### Textual Amendments

**F703** S. 96C inserted (1.8.2001 for E. and otherwise *prosp.*) by 2001 c. 15, ss. 4, 70(2) (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)); S.I. 2001/2804 art. 2(1)(a)

*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### *Finance and Accounts*

#### [<sup>F704</sup>97 **Means of meeting expenditure of Health Authorities and Special Health Authorities out of public funds.**

[ It is the duty of the Secretary of State to pay in respect of each financial year to each  
<sup>F705</sup>(A1) Strategic Health Authority sums not exceeding the amount allotted for that year by the Secretary of State to the Authority towards meeting the expenditure of the Authority which is attributable to the performance by the Authority of their functions in that year.]

[ It is the duty of the Secretary of State to pay to each Health Authority sums equal to  
<sup>F706</sup>(1) their general Part II expenditure.

[ “General Part II expenditure” is expenditure which—  
<sup>F707</sup>(2) (a) is attributable to the payment of remuneration to persons providing services in pursuance of Part II; but  
(b) does not fall within paragraphs (b) to (d) of subsection (3A).]

(3) It is the duty of the Secretary of State to pay to each Health Authority, in respect of each financial year, sums not exceeding the amount allotted for that year by the Secretary of State to the Authority towards meeting their main expenditure [<sup>F708</sup>in that year].

[ In determining the amount to be allotted for any year to a Health Authority under  
<sup>F709</sup>(3AA) subsection (3) above (or in varying the amount under subsection (5) below), the Secretary of State may take into account (in whatever way he thinks appropriate)—  
(a) the Authority’s general Part 2 expenditure, and  
(b) expenditure which would have been the Authority’s general Part 2 expenditure but for an order under section 103(1) below,  
during any period he thinks appropriate (or such elements of that expenditure as he thinks appropriate).]

[ Schedule 12A to this Act (which defines “general Part II expenditure” and “main  
<sup>F710</sup>(3BB) expenditure” for the purposes of, and supplements, this section and [<sup>F711</sup>sections 97C and 97F] below) shall have effect]]

[ Where the Secretary of State has made an initial determination of the amount (“the  
<sup>F712</sup>[ initial amount”) to be allotted for any year [<sup>F714</sup>to a Strategic Health Authority under  
<sup>F713</sup>(3C) subsection (A1) above or] to a Health Authority under subsection (3) above, he may increase the initial amount by a further sum if it appears to him that over a period notified to the Authority—  
(a) they satisfied any objectives notified to them as objectives to be met in performing their functions, or  
(b) they performed well against any criteria notified to them as criteria relevant to the satisfactory performance of their functions (whether or not the method of measuring their performance against those criteria was also notified to them).]]

(3D) In subsection (3C) above, “notified” means specified or referred to in a notice given to [<sup>F715</sup>the Strategic Health Authority or][<sup>F716</sup>the Health Authority] by the Secretary of State.

(3E) In making any increase under subsection (3C) above, the Secretary of State may (whether by directions under subsection (6) below or otherwise) impose any

*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

conditions he thinks fit on the application or retention by the authority of the sum in question.

- (3F) Where the Secretary of State has, under subsection (3C) above, increased by any sum the amount to be allotted for any year to [<sup>F717</sup>a Strategic Health Authority or] a Health Authority and notified the authority of the allotment and it subsequently appears to him that the authority have failed (wholly or in part) to satisfy any conditions imposed in making that increase, he may—
- (a) reduce the allotment made to that authority for that year, or
  - (b) when he has made an initial determination of the amount (“the initial amount”) to be allotted for any subsequent year to the authority under subsection (3) above, reduce the initial amount,
- by an amount not exceeding that sum.]
- (4) It is the duty of the Secretary of State to pay in respect of each financial year to each Special Health Authority sums not exceeding the amount allotted for that year by the Secretary of State to the Special Health Authority towards meeting the expenditure of the Special Health Authority which is attributable to the performance by the Special Health Authority of their functions in that year.
- (5) An amount is allotted to a [<sup>F718</sup>Strategic Health Authority,] Health Authority or Special Health Authority for a year under this section when they are notified by the Secretary of State that it is allotted to them for that year; and the Secretary of State may make an allotment under this section increasing or reducing an allotment previously so made.
- (6) The Secretary of State may give directions to a [<sup>F719</sup>Strategic Health Authority,] Health Authority or Special Health Authority with respect to—
- (a) the application of sums paid to them under [<sup>F720</sup>this section]; [<sup>F721</sup> or]
  - (b) the payment of sums by them to the Secretary of State in respect of charges or other sums referable to the valuation or disposal of assets; [<sup>F722</sup> or]
  - (bb) <sup>F723</sup> .....
  - (c) <sup>F723</sup> .....
- <sup>F724</sup>(7) .....
- (8) <sup>F725</sup> .....
- (9) Sums falling to be paid [<sup>F726</sup>Strategic Health Authorities,][<sup>F727</sup>to Health Authorities or Special Health Authorities] under this section shall be payable subject to compliance with such conditions as to records, certificates or otherwise as the Secretary of State may determine.

#### Textual Amendments

**F704** S. 97 substituted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), **Sch. 1 Pt. I para. 47** (with **Sch. 2 para. 6**)

**F705** S. 97(A1) inserted (1.10.2002) by **National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002** (c. 17), ss. 7(2), 42(3); S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(a)** (with effect for E. as mentioned in art. 3(3) of the commencing S.I.)

**F706** S. 97(1)-(3B) substituted (14.10.1997) for s. 97(1)-(3) by 1997 c. 46, s. 36; S.I. 1997/2457, **arts. 2, 3**

**F707** S. 97(2) omitted (1.9.1999 for E. with effect for the financial year 1999-2000 and subsequent financial years and otherwise *prosp.*) by virtue of 1999 c. 8, ss. 4(2)(a)(4), 67; S.I. 1999/2342, **art. 2(1), Sch. 1** and s. 97(2) repealed (*prosp.*) by 1999 c. 8, ss. 65(2), 67(1), **Sch. 5** Note

**Status:** Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- F708** Words in s. 97(3) inserted (1.9.1999 for E. with effect for the financial year 1999-2000 and subsequent financial years and otherwise *prosp.*) by 1999 c. 8, **ss. 4(2)(b)(4)**, 67; S.I. 1999/2342, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**
- F709** S. 97(3AA) inserted (22.10.2001 for E. and otherwise *prosp.*) by 2001 c. 15, **ss. 1(2)**, 70(2) (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)); S.I. 2001/3619, **art. 2(1)** (with effect as mentioned in art. 2(2))
- F710** S. 97(3BB) substituted for s. 97(3A)(3B)(1.9.1999 for E. for specified purposes with effect for the financial year 1999-2000 and subsequent financial years, 1.4.2000 otherwise and *prosp.* for W.) by virtue of 1999 c. 8, **ss. 4(2)(c)(4)**, 67; S.I. 1999/2342, art. 2(1)(4), **Schs. 1, 3**
- F711** Words in s. 97(3BB) substituted (10.10.2002 for W. and otherwise *prosp.*) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), **ss. 10(2)**, 42(3); S.I. 2002/2532, **art. 2**, **Sch.**
- F712** S. 97(3C)-(3F) inserted (1.9.1999 for E. and otherwise *prosp.*) by 1999 c. 8, **ss. 8**, 67; S.I. 1999/2342, art. 2(1), **Sch.**
- F713** S. 97(3C) substituted (30.9.2002 for E. for the purposes of the year ending with 31st March 2003 and subsequent years, otherwise *prosp.*) by 2001 c. 15, **ss. 2(2)**, 70(2) (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)); S.I. 2002/2363, **art. 2** (subject to art. 2(2))
- F714** Words in s. 97(3C) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), **ss. 7(3)**, 42(3); S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(a)** (with effect for E. as mentioned in art. 3(3) of the commencing S.I.)
- F715** Words in s. 97(3D) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), **ss. 7(4)**, 42(3); S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(a)** (with effect for E. as mentioned in art. 3(3) of the commencing S.I.)
- F716** Words in s. 97(3D) substituted (30.9.2002 for E. for the purposes of the year ending with 31st March 2003 and subsequent years, otherwise *prosp.*) by 2001 c. 15, **ss. 2(3)**, 70(2) (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)); S.I. 2002/2363, **art. 2** (subject to art. 2(2))
- F717** Words in s. 97(3F) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), **ss. 7(5)**, 42(3); S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(a)** (with effect for E. as mentioned in art. 3(3) of the commencing S.I.)
- F718** Words in s. 97(5) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), {ss. 7(6)}, 42(3); S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(a)** (with effect for E. as mentioned in art. 3(3) of the commencing S.I.)
- F719** Words in s. 97(6) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), **ss. 7(7)(a)**, 42(3); S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(a)** (with effect for E. as mentioned in art. 3(3) of the commencing S.I.)
- F720** Words in s. 97(6)(a) substituted (1.4.1998) by 1997 c. 46, s. 41(10), **Sch. 2 Pt. I para. 22**; S.I. 1998/631, art. 2(b), **Sch. 2** (with arts. 3-5)
- F721** Word in s. 97(6)(a) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), **ss. 7(7)(b)**, 42(3); S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(a)** (with effect for E. as mentioned in art. 3(3) of the commencing S.I.)
- F722** Word in s. 97(6)(b) omitted (1.4.2000 for E. and otherwise *prosp.*) by virtue of 1999 c. 8, **ss. 65**, 67, **Sch. 4 para. 31(2)**; S.I. 1999/2342, art. 2(4), **Sch. 3** and repealed (*prosp.*) by 1999 c. 8, **ss. 65**, 67, **Sch. 5**
- F723** S. 97(6)(bb)(c) repealed (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), **ss. 7(7)(c)**, 37(2), 42(3), **Sch. 9 Pt. 1**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(a)(f)** (with effect for E. as mentioned in art. 3(3) of the commencing S.I.)
- F724** S. 97(7) omitted (1.9.1999 for E. and 1.12.1999 for W.) by virtue of 1999 c. 8, s. 65, **Sch. 4 para. 31(3)**; S.I. 1999/2342, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**; S.I. 1999/3184, art. 2(2), **Sch. 2** and is repealed (1.4.2000 for E.W.) by 1999 c. 8, **ss. 65**, 67, **Sch. 5**; S.I. 2000/1041, **art. 2(d)**, **Sch.**
- F725** S. 97(8) repealed (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), **ss. 7(8)**, 37(2), 42(3), **Sch. 9 Pt. 1**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(a)(f)** (with effect for E. as mentioned in art. 3(3) of the commencing S.I.)
- F726** Words in s. 97(9) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), **ss. 7(9)**, 42(3); S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(a)** (with effect for E. as mentioned in art. 3(3) of the commencing S.I.)



*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**F727** Words in s. 97(9) inserted (1.4.2000 for E. and otherwise *prosp.*) by 1999 c. 8, ss. 65, 67, **Sch. 4 para. 31(4)**; S.I. 1999/2342, art. 2(4), **Sch. 3**

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C70** S. 97 modified (E.) (with effect in relation to the period beginning with 1.4.2002 and ending with 30.9.2002) by **The National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (Commencement No. 2) Order 2002 (S.I. 2002/2478), art. 4**

**[<sup>F728</sup>97A Financial duties of Health Authorities and Special Health Authorities.**

- (1) It is the duty of [<sup>F729</sup>every Strategic Health Authority and of] every Health Authority, in respect of each financial year, to perform their functions so as to secure that the expenditure of [<sup>F730</sup>the Authority] which is attributable to the performance by them of their functions in that year (not including expenditure within subsection (1) of section 97 above) does not exceed the aggregate of—
  - (a) the [<sup>F731</sup>amount allotted to them for that year under subsection [<sup>F732</sup>(A1) or](3)] of that section;
  - (b) any sums received by them in that year under any provision of this Act (other than sums received by them under that section); and
  - (c) any sums received by them in that year otherwise than under this Act for the purpose of enabling them to defray any such expenditure.
- (2) It is the duty of every Special Health Authority, in respect of each financial year, to perform their functions so as to secure that the expenditure of the Special Health Authority which is attributable to the performance by them of their functions in that year does not exceed the aggregate of—
  - (a) the amount allotted to them for that year under subsection (4) of section 97 above;
  - (b) any sums received by them in that year under any provision of this Act (other than sums received by them under that subsection); and
  - (c) any sums received by them in that year otherwise than under this Act for the purpose of enabling them to defray any such expenditure.
- (3) The Secretary of State may give such directions to a [<sup>F733</sup>Strategic Health Authority,] Health Authority or Special Health Authority as appear to be requisite to secure that the [<sup>F733</sup>Strategic Health Authority,] Health Authority or Special Health Authority comply with the duty imposed on them by subsection (1) or (2) above.
- (4) Directions under subsection (3) above may be specific in character.
- <sup>F734</sup>(5) .....
- (6) To the extent to which—
  - (a) any expenditure is defrayed by a [<sup>F735</sup>Strategic Health Authority,] Health Authority or Special Health Authority as trustee or on behalf of a [<sup>F735</sup>Strategic Health Authority,] Health Authority or Special Health Authority by special trustees; or
  - (b) any sums are received by a [<sup>F735</sup>Strategic Health Authority,] Health Authority or Special Health Authority as trustee or under section 96A above,
 that expenditure and, subject to subsection (8) below, those sums shall be disregarded for the purposes of this section.

*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (7) For the purposes of this section sums which, in the hands of a [<sup>F735</sup>Strategic Health Authority,] Health Authority or Special Health Authority, cease to be trust funds and become applicable by the [<sup>F735</sup>Strategic Health Authority,] Health Authority or Special Health Authority otherwise than as trustee shall be treated, on their becoming so applicable, as having been received by the [<sup>F735</sup>Strategic Health Authority,] Health Authority or Special Health Authority otherwise than as trustee.
- (8) Of the sums received by a [<sup>F735</sup>Strategic Health Authority,] Health Authority or Special Health Authority under section 96A above so much only as accrues to the [<sup>F735</sup>Strategic Health Authority,] Health Authority or Special Health Authority after defraying any expenses incurred in obtaining them shall be disregarded under subsection (6) above.
- (9) Subject to subsection (6) above, the Secretary of State may by directions determine—
- (a) whether sums of a description specified in the directions are, or are not, to be treated for the purposes of this section as received under this Act by a [<sup>F736</sup>Strategic Health Authority,] Health Authority or Special Health Authority of a description specified in the directions;
  - (b) whether expenditure of a description specified in the directions is, or is not, to be treated for those purposes as—
    - (i) expenditure within subsection (1) above of a [<sup>F737</sup>Strategic Health Authority or] Health Authority of a description so specified; or
    - (ii) expenditure within subsection (2) above of a Special Health Authority of a description so specified; or
  - (c) the extent to which, and the circumstances in which, sums received—
    - (i) by a [<sup>F738</sup>Strategic Health Authority or] Health Authority under <sup>F739</sup> . . . section 97 above; or
    - (ii) by a Special Health Authority under subsection (4) of that section, but not yet spent are to be treated for the purposes of this section as part of the expenditure of the [<sup>F736</sup>Strategic Health Authority,] Health Authority or Special Health Authority and to which financial year's expenditure they are to be attributed.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F728** S. 97A substituted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1) (3), 8(1), **Sch. 1 Pt. 1 para. 48** (with Sch. 2 para. 6)
- F729** Words in s. 97A(1) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 37(1), 42(3), **Sch. 8 para. 4(2)(a)**; S.I. 2002/2478, {art. 3(1)(e)}
- F730** Words in s. 97A(1) substituted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 37(1), 42(3), **Sch. 8 para. 4(2)(b)**; S.I. 2002/2478, {art. 3(1)(e)} (and that amending provision, Sch. 8 para. 4(2)(b), purportedly brought into force at 10.10.2002 for W. by S.I. 2002/2532, **art 2** Sch.)
- F731** Words in s. 97A substituted (1.4.1998) by 1997 c. 46, s. 41(10), **Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 23(a)**; S.I. 1998/631, art. 2(b), **Sch. 2** (with arts. 3-5)
- F732** Words in s. 97A(1)(a) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 37(1), 42(3), **Sch. 8 para. 4(2)(c)**; S.I. 2002/2478, {art. 3(1)(e)} (and that amending provision, Sch. 8 para. 4(2)(c), purportedly brought into force at 10.10.2002 for W. by S.I. 2002/2532, **art 2** Sch.)
- F733** Words in s. 97A(3) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 37(1), 42(3), **Sch. 8 para. 4(3)**; S.I. 2002/2478, {art. 3(1)(e)}

*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F734** S. 97A(5) omitted (1.9.1999 for E. and 1.12.1999 for W.) by virtue of 1999 c. 8, s. 65, **Sch. 4 para. 32**; S.I. 1999/2342, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**; S.I. 1999/3184, art. 2(2), **Sch. 2** and is repealed (1.4.2000) by 1999 c. 8, s. 65, **Sch. 5**; S.I. 2000/1041, art. 2(d), **Sch.**
- F735** Words in s. 97A(6)(7)(8) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 37(1), 42(3), **Sch. 8 para. 4(3)**; S.I. 2002/2478, {art. 3(1)((e)}
- F736** Words in s. 97A(9) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 37(1), 42(3), **Sch. 8 para. 4(4)(a)**; S.I. 2002/2478, {art. 3(1)((e)}
- F737** Words in s. 97A(9)(b)(i) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 37(1), 42(3), **Sch. 8 para. 4(4)(b)**; S.I. 2002/2478, {art. 3(1)((e)}
- F738** Words in s. 97A(9)(c)(i) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 37(1), 42(3), **Sch. 8 para. 4(4)(b)**; S.I. 2002/2478, {art. 3(1)((e)}
- F739** Words in s. 97A(9)(c)(i) repealed (1.4.1998) by 1997 c. 46, s. 41(10)(12), **Sch. 2 Pt. I para. 23(b)**, **Sch. 3 Pt. I**; S.I. 1998/631, art. 2(b), **Sch. 2**, **Sch. 3 Pt. I** (with arts. 3-5)

**[<sup>F740</sup>97A Resource limits for Health Authorities and Special Health Authorities.**

- (1) It is the duty of [<sup>F741</sup>every Strategic Health Authority,] every Health Authority and every Special Health Authority to ensure that the use of their resources in a financial year does not exceed the amount specified for them in relation to that year by the Secretary of State.
- (2) In the application of subsection (1) above to a Health Authority no account shall be taken of any use of resources for the purpose of general Part II expenditure (within the meaning of paragraph 1 of Schedule 12A).
- [ But in specifying an amount for a Health Authority under subsection (1) above (or in <sup>F742</sup>(2A) varying the amount under subsection (6) below), the Secretary of State may take into account (in whatever way he thinks appropriate)—
- (a) any such use of resources, and
- (b) the use of any resources which would have been for the purpose of the Authority's general Part 2 expenditure but for an order under section 103(1) below,
- during any period he thinks appropriate (or such elements of such uses of resources as he thinks appropriate).]
- (3) For the purpose of subsection (1) above the Secretary of State may give directions—
- (a) specifying uses of resources which are to be, or not to be, taken into account;
- (b) making provision for determining to which [<sup>F743</sup>Strategic Health Authority,] Health Authority or Special Health Authority certain uses of resources are to be attributed;
- (c) specifying descriptions of resources which are to be, or not to be, taken into account.
- (4) Subsections (6) to (8) of section 97A above shall apply in relation to the duty under subsection (1) above as they apply in relation to the duties under section 97A(1) and (2); and for that purpose references to the defraying of expenditure and the receipt of sums shall be construed as references to the incurring of liabilities and the acquisition of assets.
- (5) The provisions in section 97A(3) and (4) above about the giving of directions by the Secretary of State shall apply in relation to the duty under subsection (1) above as they apply in relation to the duties under section 97A(1) and (2).

**Status:** Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (6) Where the Secretary of State has specified an amount under this section in respect of a financial year, he may vary the amount by a later specification.
- (7) In this section a reference to the use of resources is a reference to their expenditure, consumption or reduction in value.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F740** S. 97AA inserted (22.12.2000 for E. for specified purposes, 1.4.2001 for other specified purposes and otherwise *prosp*) by 2000 c. 20, ss. 12(1), 30; S.I. 2000/3349, arts. 2(c), 3(1)(a), 4 (with transitional provisions in art. 5)
- F741** Words in s. 97AA(1) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 37(1), 42(3), Sch. 8 para. 5(a); S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(e)
- F742** S. 97AA(2A) inserted (22.10.2001 for E. and otherwise *prosp.*) by 2001 c. 15, ss. 1(2), 70(2) (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)); S.I. 2001/3619, art. 2(1) (with effect as mentioned in art. 2(2))
- F743** Words in s. 97AA(3)(b) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 37(1), 42(3), Sch. 8 para. 5(b); S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(e)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C71** S. 97AA amended (W.) (*prosp.*) by 2000 c. 20, ss. 12(2), 30

<sup>F744</sup>97B .....

#### Textual Amendments

- F744** S. 97B repealed (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, s. 5(1)(2), Sch. 3 (with Sch. 2 para. 6)

#### [<sup>F745</sup>[<sup>F746</sup>97C] **Public funding of Primary Care Trusts.**

- (1) It is the duty of the Secretary of State, in respect of each financial year, to pay to each Primary Care Trust—
  - (a) sums equal to their general Part 2 expenditure; and
  - (b) sums not exceeding the amount allotted by the Secretary of State to the Primary Care Trust for that year towards meeting the Trust’s main expenditure in that year.
- (2) In determining the amount to be allotted for any year to a Primary Care Trust under subsection (1)(b) above (or in varying the amount under subsection (7) below), the Secretary of State may take into account, in whatever way he thinks appropriate—
  - (a) the Trust’s general Part 2 expenditure; and
  - (b) expenditure which would have been the Trust’s general Part 2 expenditure but for an order under section 103(1) below,during any period he thinks appropriate (or such elements of that expenditure as he thinks appropriate).
- (3) Where the Secretary of State has made an initial determination of the amount (“the initial amount”) to be allotted for any year to a Primary Care Trust under subsection (1) (b) above, he may increase the initial amount by a further sum if it appears to him that over a period notified to the Trust—

**Status:** Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) it satisfied any objectives notified to it as objectives to be met in performing its functions; or
  - (b) it performed well against any criteria notified to it as criteria relevant to the satisfactory performance of its functions (whether or not the method of measuring its performance against those criteria was also notified to it).
- (4) In subsection (3) above, “notified” means specified or referred to in a notice given to the Primary Care Trust by the Secretary of State.
- (5) In making any increase under subsection (3) above, the Secretary of State may (whether by directions under subsection (8) below or otherwise) impose any conditions he thinks fit on the application or retention by the Primary Care Trust of the sum in question.
- (6) Where the Secretary of State has, under subsection (3) above, increased by any sum the amount to be allotted for any year to a Primary Care Trust and notified the Trust of the allotment and it subsequently appears to him that the Trust has failed (wholly or in part) to satisfy any conditions imposed in making that increase, he may—
- (a) reduce the allotment made to the Trust for that year; or
  - (b) when he has made an initial determination of the amount (“the initial amount”) to be allotted for any subsequent year to the Trust under subsection (1)(b) above, reduce the initial amount,
- by any amount not exceeding that sum.
- (7) An amount is allotted to a Primary Care Trust for a year under this section when the Trust is notified by the Secretary of State that the amount is allotted to the Trust for that year; and the Secretary of State may make an allotment under this section increasing or reducing (subject to subsection (6) above) an allotment previously so made, and the reference to a determination in subsection (3) above includes a determination made with a view to increasing or reducing an allotment previously so made.
- (8) The Secretary of State may give directions to a Primary Care Trust with respect to—
- (a) the application of sums paid to it under this section, or
  - (b) the payment of sums by it to the Secretary of State in respect of charges or other sums referable to the valuation or disposal of assets.
- (9) Sums falling to be paid to Primary Care Trusts under this section shall be payable subject to compliance with such conditions as to records, certificates or otherwise as the Secretary of State may determine.]]

#### Textual Amendments

**F745** S. 97C inserted (1.4.2000 for E. for the purposes of the financial year 2000-2001 and subsequent financial years and otherwise *prosp.*) by 1999 c. 8, ss. 3, 67; S.I. 1999/2342, art. 2(4), Sch. 3

**F746** S. 97C substituted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 8, 42(3); S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(a) (with effect for E. as mentioned in art. 3(3) of the commencing S.I.)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C72** S. 97C modified (E.) (with effect in relation to the period beginning with 1.4.2002 and ending with 30.9.2002) by The National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (Commencement No. 2) Order 2002 (S.I. 2002/2478), art. 4

*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## [<sup>F747</sup>97D Financial duties of Primary Care Trusts.

- (1) It is the duty of every Primary Care Trust, in respect of each financial year, to perform its functions so as to secure that the expenditure of the trust which is attributable to the performance by the trust of its functions in that year (not including expenditure within subsection (1)(a) of section 97C above) does not exceed the aggregate of—
  - (a) the amount allotted to it for that year under subsection (1)(b) of that section,
  - (b) any sums received by it in that year under any provision of this Act (other than sums received by it under that section <sup>F748</sup> . . . ), and
  - (c) any sums received by it in that year otherwise than under this Act for the purpose of enabling it to defray any such expenditure.
- (2) The Secretary of State may give such directions to a Primary Care Trust as appear to be requisite to secure that the trust complies with the duty imposed on it by subsection (1) above.
- (3) Directions under subsection (2) above may be specific in character.
- (4) To the extent to which—
  - (a) any expenditure is defrayed by a Primary Care Trust as trustee or on behalf of a Primary Care Trust by special trustees, or
  - (b) any sums are received by a Primary Care Trust as trustee or under section 96A above,that expenditure and, subject to subsection (6) below, those sums shall be disregarded for the purposes of this section.
- (5) For the purposes of this section sums which, in the hands of a Primary Care Trust, cease to be trust funds and become applicable by the Primary Care Trust otherwise than as trustee shall be treated, on their becoming so applicable, as having been received by the Primary Care Trust otherwise than as trustee.
- (6) Of the sums received by a Primary Care Trust under section 96A above so much only as accrues to the Primary Care Trust after defraying any expenses incurred in obtaining them shall be disregarded under subsection (4) above.
- (7) Subject to subsection (4) above, the Secretary of State may by directions determine—
  - (a) whether specified sums are, or are not, to be treated for the purposes of this section as received under this Act by a specified Primary Care Trust,
  - (b) whether specified expenditure is, or is not, to be treated for those purposes as expenditure within subsection (1) above of a specified Primary Care Trust, or
  - (c) the extent to which, and the circumstances in which, sums received by a Primary Care Trust under section 97C above but not yet spent are to be treated for the purposes of this section as part of the expenditure of the Primary Care Trust and to which financial year's expenditure they are to be attributed.
- (8) In subsection (7) above, “specified” means of a description specified in the directions.]

### Textual Amendments

**F747** s. 97D inserted (1.4.2000 for E. for the purposes of the financial year 2000-2001 and subsequent financial years and otherwise *prosp.*) by 1999 c. 8, ss. 3, 67; S.I. 1999/2342, art. 2(4), **Sch. 3**



*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**F748** Words in s. 97D(1)(b) repealed (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 37(1), 42(3), Sch. 8 para. 6, **Sch. 9 Pt. 3**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(e)(f)**

**[<sup>F749</sup>97E Resource limits for Primary Care Trusts.**

- (1) It is the duty of every Primary Care Trust to ensure that the use of their resources in a financial year does not exceed the amount specified for them in relation to that year by [<sup>F750</sup>the Secretary of State] .
- (2) For the purpose of subsection (1) above no account shall be taken of any use of resources for the purpose of a trust's general Part II expenditure (within the meaning of paragraph 4 of Schedule 12A).
- [<sup>F751</sup>(2A) But in specifying an amount for a Primary Care Trust under subsection (1) above (or in varying the amount under subsection (4) below), the Secretary of State may take into account (in whatever way he thinks appropriate)—
  - (a) any such use of resources; and
  - (b) the use of any resources which would have been for the purpose of the trust's general Part 2 expenditure but for an order under section 103(1) below, during any period he thinks appropriate (or such elements of such uses of resources as he thinks appropriate).]
- (3) For the purpose of subsection (1) above the Secretary of State may give directions—
  - (a) specifying uses of resources which are to be, or not to be, taken into account;
  - (b) making provision for determining to which Primary Care Trust certain uses of resources are to be attributed;
  - (c) specifying descriptions of resources which are to be, or not to be, taken into account.
- (4) Where an amount has been specified under this section in respect of a financial year, it may be varied by a later specification.
- (5) Subsections (4) to (6) of section 97D above shall apply in relation to the duty under subsection (1) above as they apply in relation to the duty under section 97D(1); and for that purpose references to the defraying of expenditure and the receipt of sums shall be construed as references to the incurring of liabilities and the acquisition of assets.
- (6) The provisions in section 97D(2) and (3) above about the giving of directions by the Secretary of State shall apply in relation to the duty under subsection (1) above as they apply in relation to the duty under section 97D(1).
- (7) In this section a reference to the use of resources is a reference to their expenditure, consumption or reduction in value.]

**Textual Amendments**

**F749** S. 97E inserted (22.12.2000 for E. for specified purposes, 1.4.2001 for other specified purposes and otherwise *prosp.*) by 2000 c. 20, **ss. 13(1)**, 30; S.I. 2000/3349, **arts. 2(c)**, 3(1)(a), 4 (with transitional provisions in art. 5)

**F750** Words in s. 97E(1) substituted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 37(1), 42(3), **Sch. 8 para. 7(2)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(e)**

**Status:** Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

**F751** S. 97E(2A) substituted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 37(1), 42(3), **Sch. 8 para. 7(3)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(e)**

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C73** S. 97E amended (W.) (*prosp.*) by 2000 c. 20, **ss. 13(2)**, 30

[<sup>F752</sup>**97F Public funding of Local Health Boards**

- (1) It is the duty of the National Assembly for Wales, in respect of each financial year, to pay to each Local Health Board—
  - (a) sums equal to their general Part 2 expenditure; and
  - (b) sums not exceeding the amount allotted by the National Assembly for Wales to the Local Health Board for that year towards meeting the Board’s main expenditure in that year.
- (2) In determining the amount to be allotted for any year to a Local Health Board under subsection (1)(b) above (or in varying the amount under subsection (7) below), the National Assembly for Wales may take into account, in whatever way the Assembly thinks appropriate—
  - (a) the Board’s general Part 2 expenditure; and
  - (b) expenditure which would have been the Board’s general Part 2 expenditure but for an order under section 103(1) below,during any period the Assembly thinks appropriate (or such elements of that expenditure as it thinks appropriate).
- (3) Where the National Assembly for Wales has made an initial determination of the amount (“the initial amount”) to be allotted for any year to a Local Health Board under subsection (1)(b) above, the Assembly may increase the initial amount by a further sum if it appears to it that over a period notified to the Board—
  - (a) the Board satisfied any objectives notified to it as objectives to be met in performing its functions; or
  - (b) it performed well against any criteria notified to it as criteria relevant to the satisfactory performance of its functions (whether or not the method of measuring its performance against those criteria was also notified to it).
- (4) In subsection (3) above, “notified” means specified or referred to in a notice given to the Local Health Board by the National Assembly for Wales.
- (5) In making any increase under subsection (3) above, the National Assembly for Wales may (whether by directions under subsection (8) below or otherwise) impose any conditions it thinks fit on the application or retention by the Local Health Board of the sum in question.
- (6) Where the National Assembly for Wales has, under subsection (3) above, increased by any sum the amount to be allotted for any year to a Local Health Board and notified the Board of the allotment and it subsequently appears to the Assembly that the Board has failed (wholly or in part) to satisfy any conditions imposed in making that increase, the Assembly may—
  - (a) reduce the allotment made to the Board for that year; or
  - (b) when the Assembly has made an initial determination of the amount (“the initial amount”) to be allotted for any subsequent year to the Board under subsection (1)(b) above, reduce the initial amount,

*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

by any amount not exceeding that sum.

- (7) An amount is allotted to a Local Health Board for a year under this section when the Board is notified by the National Assembly for Wales that the amount is allotted to the Board for that year; and the National Assembly for Wales may make an allotment under this section increasing or reducing (subject to subsection (6) above) an allotment previously so made, and the reference to a determination in subsection (3) above includes a determination made with a view to increasing or reducing an allotment previously so made.
- (8) The National Assembly for Wales may give directions to a Local Health Board with respect to—
- (a) the application of sums paid to the Board under this section, or
  - (b) the payment of sums by the Board to the National Assembly for Wales in respect of charges or other sums referable to the valuation or disposal of assets.
- (9) Sums falling to be paid to Local Health Boards under this section shall be payable subject to compliance with such conditions as to records, certificates or otherwise as the National Assembly for Wales may determine.

#### Textual Amendments

**F752** Ss. 97F-97H inserted (10.10.2002 for W.) by [National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 \(c. 17\)](#), [ss. 9](#), 42(3); S.I. 2002/2532, [art. 2](#), Sch.

### 97G Financial duties of Local Health Boards

- (1) It is the duty of every Local Health Board, in respect of each financial year, to perform its functions so as to secure that the expenditure of the Board which is attributable to the performance by the Board of its functions in that year (not including expenditure within subsection (1)(a) of section 97F above) does not exceed the aggregate of—
- (a) the amount allotted to it for that year under subsection (1)(b) of that section;
  - (b) any sums received by it in that year under any provision of this Act (other than sums received by it under that section); and
  - (c) any sums received by it in that year otherwise than under this Act for the purpose of enabling it to defray any such expenditure.
- (2) The National Assembly for Wales may give such directions to a Local Health Board as appear to be requisite to secure that the Board complies with the duty imposed on it by subsection (1) above.
- (3) Directions under subsection (2) may be specific in character.
- (4) To the extent to which—
- (a) any expenditure is defrayed by a Local Health Board as trustee or on behalf of a Local Health Board by special trustees; or
  - (b) any sums are received by a Local Health Board as trustee or under section 96A above,
- that expenditure and, subject to subsection (6) below, those sums shall be disregarded for the purposes of this section.

*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (5) For the purposes of this section sums which, in the hands of a Local Health Board, cease to be trust funds and become applicable by the Local Health Board otherwise than as trustee shall be treated, on their becoming so applicable, as having been received by the Local Health Board otherwise than as trustee.
- (6) Of the sums received by a Local Health Board under section 96A above so much only as accrues to the Local Health Board after defraying any expenses incurred in obtaining them shall be disregarded under subsection (4) above.
- (7) Subject to subsection (4) above, the National Assembly for Wales may by directions determine—
  - (a) whether specified sums are, or are not, to be treated for the purposes of this section as received under this Act by a specified Local Health Board;
  - (b) whether specified expenditure is, or is not, to be treated for those purposes as expenditure within subsection (1) above of a specified Local Health Board; or
  - (c) the extent to which, and the circumstances in which, sums received by a Local Health Board under section 97F above but not yet spent are to be treated for the purposes of this section as part of the expenditure of the Local Health Board and to which financial year's expenditure they are to be attributed.
- (8) In subsection (7) above, “specified” means of a description specified in the directions.

#### Textual Amendments

**F752** Ss. 97F-97H inserted (10.10.2002 for W.) by [National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 \(c. 17\)](#), [ss. 9](#), 42(3); [S.I. 2002/2532](#), [art. 2](#), Sch.

### 97H Resource limits for Local Health Boards

- (1) It is the duty of every Local Health Board to ensure that the use of its resources in a financial year does not exceed the amount specified for it in relation to that year by the National Assembly for Wales.
- (2) For the purpose of subsection (1) above no account shall be taken of any use of resources for the purposes of a Board's general Part 2 expenditure (within the meaning of paragraph 6A of Schedule 12A).
- (3) But in specifying an amount for a Local Health Board under subsection (1) above (or in varying the amount under subsection (5) below), the National Assembly for Wales may take into account (in whatever way it thinks appropriate)—
  - (a) any such use of resources; and
  - (b) the use of any resources which would have been for the purpose of the Board's general Part 2 expenditure but for an order under section 103(1) below, during any period the Assembly thinks appropriate (or such elements of such uses of resources as it thinks appropriate).
- (4) For the purpose of subsection (1) above the National Assembly for Wales may give directions—
  - (a) specifying uses of resources which are to be, or not to be, taken into account;
  - (b) making provision for determining to which Local Health Board certain uses of resources are to be attributed;

*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (c) specifying descriptions of resources which are to be, or not to be, taken into account.
- (5) Where an amount has been specified under this section in respect of a financial year, it may be varied by a later specification.
- (6) Subsections (4) to (6) of section 97G above shall apply in relation to the duty under subsection (1) above as they apply in relation to the duty under section 97G(1); and for that purpose references to the defraying of expenditure and the receipt of sums shall be construed as references to the incurring of liabilities and the acquisition of assets.
- (7) The provisions in section 97G(2) and (3) above about the giving of directions by the National Assembly for Wales shall apply in relation to the duty under subsection (1) above as they apply in relation to the duty under section 97G(1).
- (8) In this section a reference to the use of resources is a reference to their expenditure, consumption or reduction in value.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F752** Ss. 97F-97H inserted (10.10.2002 for W.) by [National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 \(c. 17\)](#), ss. 9, 42(3); S.I. 2002/2532, art. 2, Sch.

## 98 Accounts and audit.

- (1) Accounts, in such form as the Secretary of State may with the approval of the Treasury direct, shall be kept by—
- [<sup>F753</sup>(za) every Strategic Health Authority;]
  - [<sup>F754</sup>(a) every Health Authority;
  - (b) every Special Health Authority;
  - [ every Primary Care Trust]]
  - <sup>F755</sup>(bb)
  - [<sup>F756</sup>(bbb) every Local Health Board;]
  - (c) every NHS trust;
  - (d) all special trustees appointed in pursuance of section 29(1) of the National Health Service Reorganisation Act 1973 and section 95(1) above;
  - [<sup>F757</sup>(dd) any trustees for an NHS trust appointed in pursuance of section 11 of the National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990]
  - [<sup>F758</sup>(ddd) any trustees for a Primary Care Trust appointed in pursuance of section 96B above; and]
  - (e) the Dental Estimates Board

Those accounts shall be audited by auditors [<sup>F759</sup>appointed by the Audit Commission for Local Authorities and the National Health Service in England and Wales and the Comptroller] and Auditor General may examine all such accounts and any records relating to them, and any report of the auditor on them.

- (2) Every such body shall prepare and transmit to the Secretary of State in respect of each financial year annual accounts in such form as the Secretary of State may with the approval of the Treasury direct.

*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

[<sup>F761</sup>(2AA) Every Primary Care Trust shall send a copy of any accounts it has prepared under subsection (2) above to the [<sup>F762</sup>Strategic Health Authority] within whose area the trust's area falls.]

[<sup>F763</sup>(2A) The accounts prepared and transmitted by a [<sup>F764</sup>Health Authority] in pursuance of subsection (2) above shall include annual accounts of a Community Health Council if—

- (a) the Council is established for the [<sup>F765</sup>Health Authority's area]; or
- (b) the [<sup>F766</sup>Health Authority is prescribed for the purposes of this subsection] in relation to the Council.]

[<sup>F767X2</sup>(2B) in preparing its annual accounts in pursuance of subsection (2) above, and NHS trust shall comply with any directions given by the Secretary of State with the approval of the Treasury as to—

- (a) the methods and principles according to which the accounts are to be prepared; and
- (b) the information to be given in the accounts.]

[<sup>F768F769X2</sup> So far as relates to allotted sums paid [<sup>F770</sup>under section 15 of the <sup>M46</sup>National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990] to the members of a fund-holding practice—

- (a) accounts shall be kept in such form as the Secretary of State may with the approval of the Treasury direct;
- (b) the Comptroller and Auditor General may examine the accounts and records relating to them and any report of the auditor on them;
- (c) in respect of each financial year, annual accounts in such form as the Secretary of State may with the approval of the Treasury direct shall be prepared and submitted to the relevant [<sup>F771</sup>Health Authority]; and
- (d) in respect of each financial year, each [<sup>F771</sup>Health Authority] shall prepare in such form as the Secretary of State may with the approval of the Treasury direct, and include in its own accounts, a summarised version of the accounts submitted to [<sup>F772</sup>the Health Authority] under paragraph (c) above.]]

(3) ..... <sup>F773</sup>

(4) The Secretary of State shall prepare in respect of each financial year—

- (a) in such form as the Treasury may direct, summarised accounts of [<sup>F774</sup>the bodies mentioned in subsection (1) above, other than the Dental Estimates Board]
- (b) in such form and containing such information as the Treasury may direct, a statement of the accounts of the Dental Estimates Board;

and shall transmit them on or before 30th November in each year to the Comptroller and Auditor General, who shall examine and certify them, and lay copies of them together with his report on them before both Houses of Parliament.

<sup>F775</sup>(5) .....

#### Editorial Information

X2 S.98(2B): this is one of two provisions of this number inserted by different authorities in the same Act



**Status:** Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### Textual Amendments

- F753** S. 98(1)(za) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 1(3), 42(3), **Sch. 1 Pt. 1 para. 29(a)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(c)**
- F754** S. 98(1)(a)-(c) substituted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), **Sch. 1 para. 50(a)** (with Sch. 2 para. 6) (with transitional provisions in S.I. 1996/709, **art. 5(1)**)
- F755** S. 98(1)(bb) inserted (1.4.2000 for E. for the purposes of the financial year 2000-2001 and subsequent financial years and otherwise *prosp.*) by 1999 c. 8, ss. 65, 67, **Sch. 4 para. 33(a)**; S.I. 1999/2342, art. 2(4), **Sch. 3**
- F756** S. 98(1)(bbb) inserted (10.10.2002 for W.) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 6(2), 42(3), **Sch. 5 para. 21**; S.I. 2002/2532, **art. 2**, Sch.
- F757** S. 98(1)(dd) inserted by National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990 (c. 19, SIF 113:2), **s. 11(7)**
- F758** S. 98(1)(ddd) inserted (1.4.2000 for E. for the purposes of the financial year 2000-2001 and subsequent financial years and otherwise *prosp.*) by 1999 c. 8, ss. 65, 67, **Sch. 4 para. 33(b)**; S.I. 1999/2342, art. 2(4), **Sch. 3**
- F759** Words substituted by National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990 (c. 19, SIF 113:2), **s. 20(2)(a)(8)**
- F760** Para. repealed by Health and Social Security Act 1984 (c. 48, SIF 113:1), s. 24, **Sch. 8 Pt. I**
- F761** S. 98(2AA) inserted (1.4.2000 for E. for the purposes of the financial year 2000-2001 and subsequent financial years and otherwise *prosp.*) by 1999 c. 8, ss. 65, 67, **Sch. 4 para. 33(c)**; S.I. 1999/2342, art. 2(4), **Sch. 3**
- F762** Words in s. 98(2AA) substituted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 1(3), 42(3), **Sch. 1 Pt. 1 para. 29(b)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(c)**
- F763** S. 98(2A) inserted by Health and Social Security Act 1984 (c. 48, SIF 113:1), **s. 6(2)**
- F764** Words in s. 98(2A) substituted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), **Sch. 1 para. 50(b)(i)** (with Sch. 2 para. 6) (with transitional provisions in S.I. 1996/709, **art. 5(1)**)
- F765** Words in s. 98(2A)(a) substituted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), **Sch. 1 para. 50(b)(ii)** (with Sch. 2 para. 6) (with transitional provisions in S.I. 1996/709, **art. 5(1)**)
- F766** Words in s. 98(2A)(b) substituted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), **Sch. 1 para. 50(b)(iii)** (with Sch. 2 para. 6) (with transitional provisions in S.I. 1996/709, **art. 5(1)**)
- F767** S. 98(2B) inserted (5.7.1990) by National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990 (c. 19, SIF 113:2), s. 5(8), **Sch. 2 para. 24(2)**
- F768** S. 98(2B) inserted (1.10.1990) by National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990 (c. 19, SIF 113:2), **s. 20(2)(b)(8)**
- F769** S. 98(2B) repealed (1.10.1999 for E. and otherwise *prosp.*) by 1999 c. 8, ss. 65, 67, **Sch. 5**; S.I. 1999/2540, art. 2(1)(a), **Sch. 1**
- F770** Words in s. 98(2B) inserted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), **Sch. 1 para. 50(c)(i)** (with Sch. 2 para. 6) (with transitional provisions in S.I. 1996/709, **art. 5(1)**)
- F771** Words in s. 98(2B)(c)(d) substituted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), **Sch. 1 para. 50(c)(ii)** (with Sch. 2 para. 6) (with transitional provisions in S.I. 1996/709, **art. 5(1)**)
- F772** Words in s. 98(2B)(d) substituted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), **Sch. 1 para. 50(c)(iii)** (with Sch. 2 para. 6) (with transitional provisions in S.I. 1996/709, **art. 5(1)**)
- F773** S. 98(3) repealed by National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990 (c. 19, SIF 113:2), ss. 20(2)(c), 66(2), **Sch. 10**

*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**F774** Words substituted by [Health and Social Services and Social Security Adjudications Act 1983 \(c. 41, SIF 113:3\)](#), s. 12, [Sch. 5 para. 3\(b\)](#)

**F775** [S. 98\(5\)](#) repealed (1.4.1996) by [1995 c. 17, ss. 5\(1\)\(2\)](#), [Sch. 3](#) (with [Sch. 2 para. 6](#)) (with transitional provisions in [S.I. 1996/709, art. 5\(1\)](#))

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C74** [S. 98](#) extended (1.4.1999) by [S.I. 1999/804, art. 7](#)

[S. 98](#) extended (1.4.1999) by [S.I. 1999/807, art. 5\(1\)](#)

**C75** [S. 98\(1\)](#) applied (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by [1995 c. 17, ss. 4\(1\)\(2\), 8\(1\)](#), [Sch. 2 para. 13\(4\)](#) (with [Sch. 2 para. 6](#)) (with transitional provisions in [S.I. 1996/709, art. 5\(1\)](#))

**C76** [S. 98\(2B\)](#) continued (W.) (1.4.2000) by [S.I. 2000/999, art. 9\(3\)](#)

**C77** [S. 98\(2B\)\(c\)](#) modified (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by [1995 c. 17, ss. 4\(1\)\(2\), 8\(1\)](#), [Sch. 2 para. 13\(5\)](#) (with [Sch. 2 para. 6](#)) (with transitional provisions in [S.I. 1996/709, art. 5\(1\)](#))

[S. 98\(2B\)\(c\)](#) modified (W.) (1.4.2000) by [S.I. 2000/999, art. 9\(1\)\(2\)](#)

**C78** [S. 98\(4\)](#): Power to exclude conferred (1.4.2001) by [2000 c. 20, s. 14\(1\)](#); [S.I. 2000/3349, art. 3\(1\)\(b\)](#) (with transitional provisions in [art. 5](#))

**C79** [S. 98\(4\)](#) modified (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by [1995 c. 17, ss. 4\(1\)\(2\), 8\(1\)](#), [Sch. 2 para. 13\(6\)](#) (with [Sch. 2 para. 6](#)) (with transitional provisions in [S.I. 1996/709, art. 5\(1\)](#))

#### Marginal Citations

**M46** [1990 c. 19](#).

## 99 Regulation of financial arrangements.

(1) The Secretary of State may by regulations provide, in the case of all or any of the following bodies—

[<sup>F776</sup>(za) Strategic Health Authorities,]

[<sup>F777</sup>(a) Health Authorities,

(b) Special Health Authorities,]

[<sup>F778</sup>(ba) Primary Care Trusts]

[<sup>F779</sup>(bb) Local Health Boards;]

(e) Community Health Councils, and

(f) the Dental Estimates Board,

for restricting the making of payments by or on behalf of the body otherwise than on such authorisation and subject to such conditions as may be specified in the regulations.

(2) Such provision may be made subject to such exceptions as may be so specified, and those regulations may contain such other provisions as to the making and carrying out by all or any of those bodies of such arrangements with respect to financial matters as the Secretary of State thinks necessary for the purpose of securing that the affairs of such bodies are conducted, so far as reasonably practicable, in such manner as to prevent financial loss and to ensure and maintain efficiency.

(3) The Secretary of State may give directions to any of those bodies as to any matter with respect to which those regulations may be made; and those directions may be specific in character and shall be—

(a) such as appear to him requisite to secure that the affairs of the body are conducted in such a manner as is mentioned in subsection (2) above,

(b) without prejudice to the operation of any such regulation,

**Status:** Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

F780  
. . . .

#### Textual Amendments

- F776** S. 99(1)(za) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 1(3), 42(3), **Sch. 1 Pt. 1 para. 30**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(c)**
- F777** S. 99(1)(a)(b) substituted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by s. 99(1)(a)-(d) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), **Sch. 1 para. 51** (with Sch. 2 para. 6)
- F778** S. 99(ba) inserted (4.1.2000 for E. and otherwise *prosp.*) by 1999 c. 8, ss. 65, 67, **Sch. 4 para. 34**; S.I. 1999/2342, art. 2(3), Sch. 2
- F779** S. 99(1)(bb) inserted (10.10.2002 for W.) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 6(2), 42(3), {Sch. 5 para. 22}; S.I. 2002/2532, **art. 2**, Sch.
- F780** Words in s. 99(3) omitted (1.9.1999 for E. and 1.12.1999 for W.) by virtue of 1999 c. 8, s. 65, **Sch. 4 para. 34(b)**; S.I. 1999/2342, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**; S.I. 1999/3184, art. 2(2), **Sch. 2** and is repealed (1.4.2000) by 1999 c. 8, s. 65, **Sch. 5**; S.I. 2000/1041, art. 2(d), **Sch.**

## 100 Other Payments.

- (1) There shall be paid out of moneys provided by Parliament such expenses incurred by—
- <sup>F781</sup>(a) . . . . .
- (b) any standing advisory committee constituted under section 6 above,
- (c) <sup>F782</sup>. . . . .
- (d) the Tribunal constituted under section 46 above, and
- [<sup>F783</sup>(dd) the FHSAA,]
- (e) the Dental Estimates Board,
- as may be determined by the Secretary of State with the approval of the Treasury.
- (2) Payments made under this section shall be . . . <sup>F784</sup> made at such times and in such manner as the Treasury may direct, and subject to such conditions as to records, certificates, or otherwise as the Secretary of State may with the approval of the Treasury determine.

#### Textual Amendments

- F781** S. 100(1)(a) repealed by Health Services Act 1980 (c. 53, SIF 113:2), **Sch. 7**
- F782** S. 100(1)(c) repealed (1.4.2002) by 2001 c. 15, ss. 67(1)(2), 70(2), Sch. 5 para. 5(10)(a), Sch. 6 Pt. I (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)); S.I. 2002/1095, **art. 2(3)**, Sch.
- F783** S. 100(1)(dd) inserted (1.10.2001 for certain purposes for E., 1.12.2001 for all other purposes for E. and 26.8.2002 for W.) by 2001 c. 15, ss. 67(1), 70(2), Sch. 5 para. 5(10)(b) (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)); S.I. 2001/3294, art. 4, Sch. Pt. I (subject to transitional provisions in Sch. Pt. II); S.I. 2002/1919, **art. 3(1)**, Sch. Pt. II
- F784** Words repealed by Health and Social Services and Social Security Adjudications Act 1983 (c. 41, SIF 113:3), ss. 29, 30(1), Sch. 9 Pt. I para. 21, **Sch. 10 Pt. I**

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C80** S. 100(2) partially repealed by Health and Social Services and Social Security Adjudications Act 1983 (c. 41, SIF 113:3) s. 29. Sch. 9 para 21

*Status:* Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

## 101 Secretary of State's receipts.

Any sums received by the Secretary of State under this Act shall be paid into the Consolidated Fund, . . . <sup>F785</sup>

### Textual Amendments

**F785** Words repealed by [Health Services Act 1980 \(c. 53, SIF 113:2\)](#), [Sch. 7](#)

*Miscellaneous provisions as to remuneration, allowances and superannuation*

## 102 Allowances and remuneration for members of certain bodies.

- (1) The Secretary of State may pay such travelling and other allowances, including compensation for loss of remunerative time, as he may, with the approval of [<sup>F786</sup>the Treasury], determine—
  - (a) to members of any of the following bodies constituted under this Act—
    - (i) <sup>F787</sup>, any standing advisory committee constituted under section 6 above to advise the Secretary of State . . . <sup>F787</sup> and any sub-committee appointed by any such standing advisory committee . . . <sup>F787</sup>;
    - (ii) the Medical Practices Committee;
    - (iii) any body on which functions are conferred by regulations under section 32 above [<sup>F788</sup>or by regulations which make provision in relation to section 28C arrangements of a kind that may be made by regulations under section 32 above];
    - (iv) the Dental Estimates Board;
    - (v) the Tribunal constituted under section 46 above [<sup>F789</sup>and the FHSAA];
  - (b) to members of any other body being a body specified in an order made by the Secretary of State as being a body recognised by him to have been formed for the purpose of performing a function connected with the provision of services under this Act.
- (2) The Secretary of State may pay to members of any of the following bodies such remuneration as he may, with the approval of [<sup>F790</sup>the Treasury], determine—
  - (a) the Medical Practices Committee;
  - (b) any body on which functions are conferred by regulations under section 32 above;
  - (c) the Dental Estimates Board;
  - (d) the Tribunal constituted under section 46 above [<sup>F789</sup>and the FHSAA];
  - (e) any other body constituted under Part II of this Act, being a body specified in an order made for the purposes of this subsection, with the approval of [<sup>F791</sup>the Treasury], by the Secretary of State.
- (3) Allowances shall not be paid under subsection (1) above except in connection with the exercise or performance of such powers or duties, in such circumstances, as may, with the approval of [<sup>F786</sup>the Treasury], be determined by the Secretary of State.
- (4) Any payments under this section shall be made at such times and in such manner, and subject to such conditions as to records, certificates or otherwise, as the Secretary of State may, with the approval of [<sup>F791</sup>the Treasury], determine.

*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Textual Amendments

- F786** Words substituted by virtue of S.I. 1981/1670, **arts. 2(1)(c)(d)(2), 3(5)**
- F787** Words repealed by **Health Services Act 1980** (c. 53, SIF 113:2), **Sch. 7**
- F788** Words in s. 102(1)(a)(iii) inserted (1.4.1998) by 1997 c. 46, s. 41(10), **Sch. 2 Pt. I para. 24**; S.I. 1998/631, art. 2(b), **Sch. 2** (with arts. 3-5)
- F789** Words in s. 102(1)(a)(v)(2)(d) added (1.10.2001 for certain purposes for E., 1.12.2001 for all other purposes for E. and 26.8.2002 for W.) by 2001 c. 15, ss. 27(2), 70(2) (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)); S.I. 2001/3294, art. 4(1), **Sch. Pt. I** (subject to transitional provisions in **Sch. Pt. II**); S.I. 2002/1919, **art. 3(1), Sch. Pt. II**
- F790** Words substituted by virtue of S.I. 1981/1670, **arts. 2(2), 3(5)**
- F791** Words substituted by virtue of S.I. 1981/1670, **arts 2(1)(2), 3(5)**

## 103 Special arrangement as to payment of remuneration.

- (1) If the Secretary of State—
- (a) considers it appropriate for remuneration in respect of services provided by any person in pursuance of Part II of this Act [<sup>F792</sup>or in accordance with section 28C arrangements] to be paid by a particular body, and
  - (b) apart from this section the functions of the body do not include the function of paying the remuneration,
- the Secretary of State may by order confer that function on the body.
- (2) Any sums required to enable any body having that function to pay remuneration in respect of such services shall, if apart from this section there is no provision authorising the payment of the sums by the Secretary of State or out of money provided by Parliament, be paid by him.
- [<sup>F793</sup>(3) If the Secretary of State by order so provides with respect to remuneration in respect of such pharmaceutical services as may be specified in the order,—
- (a) an NHS trust [<sup>F794</sup>. . . determined in accordance with the order shall have the function of paying sums so determined to [<sup>F795</sup>a [<sup>F796</sup>Primary Care Trust, Health Authority or Local Health Board] so determined in respect of the whole or any part of that remuneration]
  - (b) nothing in subsection (2) above shall apply with respect to [<sup>F797</sup>the whole or (as the case may be) that part of the] remuneration.]

### Textual Amendments

- F792** Words in s. 103(1)(a) inserted (1.4.1998) by 1997 c. 46, s. 41(10), **Sch. 2 Pt. I para. 25**; S.I. 1998/631, art. 2(b), **Sch. 2** (with arts. 3-5)
- F793** S. 103(3) inserted by **National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990** (c. 19, SIF 113:2), s. 66(1), **Sch. 9 para. 18(9)**
- F794** Words in s. 103(3)(a) repealed (1.10.2002) by **National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002** (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 37(1), 42(3), **Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 35(a), Sch. 9 Pt. 3**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(d)(f)**
- F795** Words in s. 103(3)(a) substituted (1.9.1999 for E. and otherwise prosp.) by 1999 c. 8, **ss. 4(3)(a)(4), 67**; S.I. 1999/2342, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**
- F796** Words in s. 103(3)(a) substituted (1.10.2002) by **National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002** (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), **Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 35(a)(b)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(d)**

*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**F797** Words in s. 103(3)(b) substituted (1.9.1999 for E. and otherwise prosp.) by 1999 c. 8, ss. 4(3)(b)(4), 67; S.I. 1999/2342, art. 2(1), Sch. 1

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C81** S. 103(3)(a): by 2001 c.15, Sch. 5 para. 15(12)(a) it is provided (prosp.) that in s. 103(3)(a) after "of this Act" there is inserted "or by virtue Sch. 8A to this Act"; and that amending provision is repealed (1.10.2002) by 2002 c. 17, Sch. 8 para. 37, Sch. 9; S.I. 2002/2478

### 104 Superannuation of officers of certain hospitals.

- (1) The Secretary of State may enter into an agreement with the governing body of any hospital to which this section applies—
  - (a) for admitting officers of the hospital of such classes as may be provided in the agreement to participate, on such terms and conditions as may be so provided, in the superannuation benefits provided under regulations made under section 10 of the <sup>M47</sup>Superannuation Act 1972 in like manner as officers of [<sup>F798</sup>NHS trusts]; and
  - (b) those regulations shall apply accordingly in relation to the officers so admitted subject to such modifications as may be provided in the agreement.
- (2) The governing body of any hospital to which this section applies shall have all such powers as may be necessary for the purpose of giving effect to any terms and conditions on which their officers are admitted to participate in those superannuation benefits.
- (3) This section applies to any hospital (not vested in the Secretary of State) which used, in pursuance of arrangements made by the governing body of the hospital with the Secretary of State, for the provision of services under this Act.

#### Textual Amendments

**F798** Words in 104(1)(a) substituted (1.10.2002 for E. and 10.10.2002 for W.) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 37(1), 42(3), Sch. 8 para. 8; S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(2)(b)(i); S.I. 2002/2532, art. 2, Sch.

#### Marginal Citations

**M47** 1972 c. 11.

### 105 Payments for certain medical examinations.

- (1) Where a medical practitioner carries out a medical examination of any person with a view to an application for his admission to hospital for [<sup>F799</sup>assessment] or treatment being made under [<sup>F800</sup>Part II of the <sup>M48</sup>Mental Health Act 1983][<sup>F801</sup>the Secretary of State] shall, subject to the following provisions of this section, pay to that medical practitioner—
  - (a) reasonable remuneration in respect of that examination and in respect of any recommendation or report made by him with regard to the person examined; and
  - (b) the amount of any expenses reasonably incurred by him in connection with the examination or the making of any such recommendation or report.



*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (2) No payment shall be made under this section to a medical practitioner—
- (a) in respect of an examination carried out as part of his duty to provide general medical services for the person examined [<sup>F802</sup>or as part of his duty to perform personal medical services for that person in accordance with section 28C arrangements] ; or
  - (b) in respect of an examination carried out or any recommendation or report made as part of his duty as an officer of a [<sup>F803</sup>NHS trust, Primary Care Trust,]<sup>F804</sup>Health Authority or Special Health Authority].
- (3) This section shall only apply in a case where it is intended, when the medical examination of the person in question is carried out, that if he is admitted to hospital in pursuance of any such application as mentioned in subsection (1) above, the whole cost of his maintenance and treatment will be defrayed out of moneys provided by Parliament under this Act . . . <sup>F805</sup>

#### Textual Amendments

- F799** Words substituted by [Mental Health \(Amendment\) Act 1982 \(c. 51, SIF 85\)](#), ss. 65(1), 69(6), [Sch. 3 para. 56](#), [Sch. 5 para. 1](#)
- F800** Words substituted by [Mental Health Act 1983 \(c. 20, SIF 85\)](#), s. 148, [Sch. 4 para. 47\(b\)](#)
- F801** Words substituted by [Mental Health \(Amendment\) Act 1982 \(c. 51, SIF 85\)](#), [s. 64\(4\)](#)
- F802** Words in s. 105(2)(a) inserted (1.4.1998) by 1997 c. 46, s. 41(10), [Sch. 2 Pt. I para. 26](#); S.I. 1998/631, [art. 2\(b\)](#), [Sch. 2](#) (with arts. 3-5)
- F803** Words in s. 105(2)(b) inserted (1.10.2002 for E. and 10.10.2002 for W.) by [National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 \(c. 17\)](#), ss. 37(1), 42(3), [Sch. 8 para. 9](#); S.I. 2002/2478, [art. 3\(2\)\(b\)\(i\)](#); S.I. 2002/2532, [art. 2](#), [Sch.](#)
- F804** Words in s. 105(2)(b) substituted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), [Sch. 1 Pt. I para. 54](#) (with [Sch. 2 para. 6](#))
- F805** Words repealed by [Mental Health Act 1983 \(c. 20, SIF 85\)](#), s. 148, [Sch. 4 para. 47\(c\)](#), [Sch. 6](#)

#### Marginal Citations

- M48** [1983 c. 20\(85\)](#).

## <sup>F806</sup>PART V

#### Textual Amendments

- F806** [Ss. 106-120 \(Pt. V\)](#) repealed (5.2.1994) by 1993 c. 46, ss. 20, 22(4), [Sch. 3](#)

*Status:* Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

## PART VI

### MISCELLANEOUS AND SUPPLEMENTARY

#### *General provisions as to charges*

#### **121 Charges in respect of non-residents.**

Regulations may provide for the making and recovery, in such manner as may be prescribed, of such charges [<sup>F833</sup>as the Secretary of State may determine]—

- (a) in respect of such services provided under this Act as may be prescribed, being
- (b) services provided in respect of such persons not ordinarily resident in Great Britain as may be prescribed.

Such regulations may provide that the charges are only to be made in such cases as may be determined in accordance with the regulations.

[<sup>F834</sup>The Secretary of State may calculate charges under this section on any basis that he considers to be the appropriate commercial basis.]

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F833** Words inserted by [Health and Medicines Act 1988 \(c. 49, SIF 113:2\), s. 7\(12\)](#)

**F834** Words added by [Health and Medicines Act 1988 \(c. 49, SIF 113:2\), s. 7\(14\)](#)

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C83** [S. 121](#): functions of local authority not to be responsibility of an executive of the authority (1.4.2000) by virtue of [S.I. 2000/695, reg. 3\(2\)\(a\)](#), [Sch. 1](#)

**C84** [S. 121](#): transfer of functions (E.) (1.4.2001) by [S.I. 2001/747, regs. 2\(1\), 3, 4](#), [Sch. 1](#)

#### **122 Recovery of charges.**

(1) All charges recoverable under this Act by the Secretary of State, a local social services authority, or any body constituted under this Act [<sup>F835</sup>or Part I of the National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990], may, without prejudice to any other method of recovery, be recovered summarily as a civil debt.

(2) If any person, for the purpose of evading the payment of any charge under this Act, or of reducing the amount of any such charge—

- (a) knowingly makes any false statement or false representation, or
- (b) produces or furnishes, or causes or knowingly allows to be produced or furnished, any document or information which he knows to be false in a material particular,

the charge, or as the case may be the balance of the charge, may be recovered from him [<sup>F836</sup>as a simple contract debt] by the person by whom the cost of the service in question was defrayed.

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F835** Words inserted by [National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990 \(c. 19, SIF 113:2\), s. 66\(1\), Sch. 9 para. 18\(12\)](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**F836** Words in s. 122(2) omitted (1.11.1999 for E. and otherwise *prosp.*) by virtue of 1999 c. 8, s. 65, 67(1), Sch. 4 para. 36; S.I. 1999/2793, art. 2(1)(a), Sch. 1; and repealed (9.2.2001) by 1999 c. 8, ss. 65, 67, Sch. 5; S.I. 2001/270, art. 2(c), Sch.

**[<sup>F837</sup> 122A Recovery of other charges and payments.**

- (1) Where goods or services to which this section applies are provided and either—
  - (a) any charge payable by any person under this Act in respect of the provision of the goods or services is reduced, remitted or repaid, but that person is not entitled to the reduction, remission or repayment, or
  - (b) any payment under this Act is made to, or for the benefit of, any person in respect of the cost of obtaining the goods or services, but that person is not entitled to, or to the benefit of, the payment,

the amount mentioned in subsection (2) below is recoverable summarily as a civil debt from the person in question by the responsible authority.
- (2) That amount—
  - (a) in a case within subsection (1)(a) above, is the amount of the charge or (where it has been reduced) reduction,
  - (b) in a case within subsection (1)(b) above, is the amount of the payment.
- (3) Where two or more persons are liable under section 122(1) above or this section to pay an amount in respect of the same charge or payment, those persons shall be jointly and severally liable.
- (4) For the purposes of this section, the circumstances in which a person is to be treated as not entitled to a reduction, remission or repayment of a charge, or to (or to the benefit of) a payment, include in particular those in which it is received (wholly or partly)—
  - (a) on the ground that he or another is a person of a particular description, where the person in question is not in fact of that description,
  - (b) on the ground that he or another holds a particular certificate, when the person in question does not in fact hold such a certificate or does hold such a certificate but is not entitled to it,
  - (c) on the ground that he or another has made a particular statement, when the person in question has not made such a statement or the statement made by him is false.
- (5) In this section and section 122B below, “responsible authority” means—
  - (a) in relation to the recovery of any charge under section 122(1) above in respect of the provision of goods or services to which this section applies, the person by whom the charge is recoverable,
  - (b) in relation to the recovery by virtue of this section of the whole or part of the amount of any such charge, the person by whom the charge would have been recoverable,
  - (c) in a case within subsection (1)(b) above, the person who made the payment.
- (6) But the Secretary of State may by directions provide for—
  - (a) the functions of any responsible authority of recovering any charges under this Act in respect of the provision of goods or services to which this section applies,
  - (b) the functions of any responsible authority under this section and section 122B below,

**Status:** Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

to be exercised on behalf of the authority by another health service body.

- (7) This section applies to the following goods and services—
- (a) dental treatment and appliances provided in pursuance of this Act,
  - (b) drugs and medicines provided in pursuance of this Act,
  - (c) the testing of sight,
  - (d) optical appliances,
  - (e) any other appliances provided in pursuance of this Act.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F837** Ss. 122A-122C inserted (1.11.1999 for E. and 9.2.2001 for W.) by 1999 c. 8, ss. 39(3), 67(1); S.I. 1999/2793, art. 2(1)(a), Sch. 1; S.I. 2001/270, art. 2

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C85** Ss. 122A-122C extended (1.11.1999 for E. and 9.2.2001 for W.) by 1999 c. 8, ss. 39(3), 67(1); S.I. 1999/2793, art. 2(1)(a), Sch. 1; S.I. 2001/270, art. 2

**C86** S. 122A: Power to apply (with modifications) conferred (11.5.2001 for certain purposes, otherwise 8.3.2002 for E. and 1.7.2002 for W.) by 2001 c. 15, ss. 35(2)(c), 70(2) (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)); S.I. 2002/1095, art. 2(4); S.I. 2002/1475, art. 2(1), Sch. Pt. 1

#### <sup>F838</sup> 122B Penalties.

- (1) Regulations may provide that, where a person fails to pay—
- (a) any amount recoverable from him under section 122(1) above in respect of the provision of goods or services to which section 122A above applies, or
  - (b) any amount recoverable from him under section 122A above,
- a notice (referred to in this section as a penalty notice) may be served on the person by the responsible authority requiring him to pay to the authority, within a prescribed period, that amount together with a charge (referred to in this section as a penalty charge) of an amount determined in accordance with the regulations.
- (2) The regulations may not provide for the amount of the penalty charge to exceed whichever is the smaller of—
- (a) £100,
  - (b) the amount referred to in subsection (1)(a) or (b) above multiplied by 5.
- (3) The Secretary of State may by order provide for subsection (2) above to have effect as if, for the sum specified in paragraph (a) or the multiplier specified in paragraph (b) (including that sum or multiplier as substituted by a previous order), there were substituted a sum or (as the case may be) multiplier specified in the order.
- (4) Regulations may provide that, if a person fails to pay the amount he is required to pay under a penalty notice within the period in question, he must also pay to the responsible authority by way of penalty a further sum determined in accordance with the regulations.
- (5) The further sum must not exceed 50 per cent. of the amount of the penalty charge.
- (6) Any sum payable under the regulations (including the amount referred to in subsection (1)(a) or (b) above) may be recovered by the responsible authority summarily as a civil debt.

*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (7) But a person is not liable by virtue of a penalty notice—
- (a) to pay at any time so much of any amount referred to in subsection (1)(a) or (b) above for which he is jointly and severally liable with another as at that time has been paid, or ordered by a court to be paid, by that other, or
  - (b) to a penalty charge, or a further sum by way of penalty, if he shows that he did not act wrongfully, or with any lack of care, in respect of the charge or payment in question.
- (8) In spite of section 126(1) below, no order is to be made under subsection (3) above unless a draft has been laid before, and approved by resolution of, each House of Parliament.

#### Textual Amendments

**F838** Ss. 122A-122C inserted (1.11.1999 for E. and 9.2.2001 for W.) by 1999 c. 8, ss. 39(3), 67(1); S.I. 1999/2793, art. 2(1)(a), Sch. 1; S.I. 2001/270, art. 2

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C87** Ss. 122A-122C extended (1.11.1999 for E. and 9.2.2001 for W.) by 1999 c. 8, ss. 39(3), 67(1); S.I. 1999/2793, art. 2(1)(a), Sch. 1; S.I. 2001/270, art. 2

**C88** S. 122B: Power to apply (with modifications) conferred (11.5.2001 for certain purposes, otherwise 8.3.2002 for E. and 1.7.2002 for W.) by 2001 c. 15, ss. 35(2)(d), 70(2) (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)); S.I. 2002/1095, art. 2(4); S.I. 2002/1475, art. 2(1), Sch. Pt. 1

#### <sup>F839</sup> 122C Offences.

- (1) A person is guilty of an offence if he does any act mentioned in subsection (2) below with a view to securing for himself or another—
- (a) the evasion of the whole or part of any charge under this Act in respect of the provision of goods or services to which section 122A above applies,
  - (b) the reduction, remission or repayment of any such charge, where he or (as the case may be) the other is not entitled to the reduction, remission or repayment,
  - (c) a payment under this Act (whether to, or for the benefit of, himself or the other) in respect of the cost of obtaining such goods or services, where he or (as the case may be) the other is not entitled to, or to the benefit of, the payment.
- (2) The acts referred to in subsection (1) above are—
- (a) knowingly making, or causing or knowingly allowing another to make, a false statement or representation, or
  - (b) in the case of any document or information which he knows to be false in a material particular, producing or providing it or causing or knowingly allowing another to produce or provide it.
- (3) A person guilty of an offence under this section is liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 4 on the standard scale.
- (4) A person, although he is not a barrister or solicitor, may conduct any proceedings under this section before a magistrates' court if he is authorised to do so by the Secretary of State.
- (5) Proceedings for an offence under this section may be begun within either of the following periods—

**Status:** Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) the period of three months beginning with the date on which evidence, sufficient in the opinion of the Secretary of State to justify a prosecution for the offence, comes to his knowledge,
  - (b) the period of 12 months beginning with the commission of the offence.
- (6) For the purposes of subsection (5) above, a certificate purporting to be signed by or on behalf of the Secretary of State as to the date on which such evidence as is mentioned in paragraph (a) of that subsection came to his knowledge is conclusive evidence of that date.
- (7) Where, in respect of any charge or payment under this Act—
- (a) a person is convicted of an offence under this section, or
  - (b) a person pays any penalty charge, and any further sum by way of penalty, recoverable from him under section 122B above,
- he shall not, in a case within paragraph (a) above, be liable to pay any such penalty charge or further sum by way of penalty or, in a case within paragraph (b) above, be convicted of such an offence.
- (8) Subsection (4) of section 122A above applies for the purposes of this section as it applies for the purposes of that.

#### Textual Amendments

**F839** Ss. 122A-122C inserted (1.11.1999 for E. and 9.2.2001 for W.) by 1999 c. 8, ss. 39(3), 67(1); S.I. 1999/2793, art. 2(1)(a), Sch. 1; S.I. 2001/270, art. 2

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C89** Ss. 122A-122C extended (1.11.1999 for E. and 9.2.2001 for W.) by 1999 c. 8, ss. 39(3), 67(1); S.I. 1999/2793, art. 2(1)(a), Sch. 1; S.I. 2001/270, art. 2

### Miscellaneous

#### 123 Persons displaced by health service development.

- (1) Where the carrying out of a scheme for the provision by the Secretary of State in pursuance of this Act of hospital accommodation or other facilities will involve the displacement from any premises of persons residing in them, the Secretary of State may make arrangements with one or more of the following bodies—
- <sup>F840</sup>(a) a local housing authority within the meaning of the <sup>M53</sup>Housing Act 1985,
  - (b) a housing association or housing trust within the meaning of the <sup>M54</sup>Housing Associations Act 1985,]
  - (d) a development corporation established under the [<sup>F841M55</sup>New Towns Act 1981] and
  - (e) the Commission for the New Towns,
- for securing, in so far as it appears to him that there is no other residential accommodation suitable for the reasonable requirements of those persons available on reasonable terms, the provision of residential accommodation in advance of the displacement from time to time becoming necessary as the carrying out of the scheme proceeds.



*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (2) Arrangements under subsection (1) above may include provision for making by the Secretary of State to the body with whom the arrangements are made of payments of such amounts and for such purposes as may be approved by the Treasury.

#### Textual Amendments

**F840** S. 123(1)(a)(b) substituted for s. 123(1)(a)–(c) by [Housing \(Consequential Provisions\) Act 1985 \(c. 71, SIF 61\), s. 4, Sch. 2 para. 38\(4\)](#)

**F841** Words substituted by [New Towns Act 1981 \(c. 64, SIF 123:3\), s. 81, Sch. 12 para. 26](#)

#### Marginal Citations

**M53** 1985 c. 68(61).

**M54** 1985 c. 69(61).

**M55** 1981 c. 64(123:3).

## 124 Special notices of births and deaths.

- (1) The requirements of this section with respect to the notification of births and deaths are in addition to, and not in substitution for, the requirements of any Act relating to the registration of births and deaths.
- (2) It is the duty of each registrar of births and deaths to furnish, to the [<sup>F842</sup>Primary Care Trust or][<sup>F843</sup>Health Authority the area of which includes] the whole or part of the registrar's sub-district, such particulars of each birth and death which occurred in the [<sup>F843</sup>[<sup>F844</sup>area of the Primary Care Trust or Health Authority] as are entered] in a register of births or deaths kept for that sub-district.
- (3) Regulations may provide as to the manner in which and the times at which particulars are to be furnished in pursuance of subsection (2) above.
- (4) In the case of every child born, it is the duty—
- of the child's father, if at the time of the birth he is actually residing on the premises where the birth takes place, and
  - of any person in attendance upon the mother at the time of, or within six hours after, the birth,

to give notice of the birth (as provided in subsection (5) below) to the [<sup>F842</sup>Primary Care Trust or][<sup>F845</sup>Health Authority for the area] in which the birth takes place.

This subsection applies to any child which has issued forth from its mother after the expiry of the twenty-eighth week of pregnancy whether alive or dead.

- (5) Notice under subsection (4) above shall be given either—
- by posting within 36 hours after the birth a prepaid letter or postcard addressed to the [<sup>F842</sup>Primary Care Trust or][<sup>F846</sup>Health Authority at their offices] and containing the required information, or
  - by delivering within that period at [<sup>F846</sup>the [<sup>F847</sup>offices of the Primary Care Trust or of the Health Authority]] a written notice containing the required information,
- and [<sup>F846</sup>a [<sup>F842</sup>Primary Care Trust or] Health Authority] shall, upon application to them, supply without charge to any medical practitioner or midwife residing or practising within their area [<sup>F848</sup>or district] prepaid addressed envelopes together with the forms of notice.

*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (6) Any person who fails to give notice of a birth in accordance with subsection (4) above is liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding [<sup>F849</sup>level 1 on the standard scale], unless he satisfies the court that he believed, and had reasonable grounds for believing, that notice had been duly given by some other person.

Proceedings in respect of this offence shall not, without the Attorney-General's written consent, be taken by any person other than a party aggrieved or the [<sup>F842</sup>Primary Care Trust or][<sup>F850</sup>Health Authority] concerned.

- (7) A registrar of births and deaths shall, for the purpose of obtaining information concerning births which have occurred in his sub-district, have access at all reasonable times to notices of births received by a [<sup>F842</sup>Primary Care Trust or][<sup>F851</sup>Health Authority] under this section, or to any book in which those notices may be recorded.

#### Textual Amendments

- F842** Words in s. 124 inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), **Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 36(2)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(d)**
- F843** Words in s. 124(2) substituted (28.6.1995 for certain purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), **Sch. 1 Pt. 1 para. 55(a)** (with Sch. 2 para. 6)
- F844** Words in s. 124(2) substituted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), **Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 36(3)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(d)**
- F845** Words in s. 124(4) substituted (28.6.1995 for certain purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), **Sch. 1 Pt. 1 para. 55(b)** (with Sch. 2 para. 6)
- F846** Words in s. 124(5) substituted (28.6.1995 for certain purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), **Sch. 1 Pt. 1 para. 55(c)** (with Sch. 2 para. 6)
- F847** Words in s. 124(5) substituted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 2(5), 42(3), **Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 36(4)**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(d)**
- F848** Words in s. 124(5) repealed (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, s. 5(1)(2), **Sch. 3** (with Sch. 2 para. 6)
- F849** Words substituted by virtue of Criminal Law Act 1977 (c. 45, SIF 39:1), **s. 31** and Criminal Justice Act 1982 (c. 48, SIF 39:1), **s. 46**
- F850** Words in s. 124(6) substituted (28.6.1995 for certain purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), **Sch. 1 Pt. 1 para. 55(d)** (with Sch. 2 para. 6)
- F851** Words in s. 124(7) substituted (28.6.1995 for certain purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), **Sch. 1 Pt. 1 para. 55(e)** (with Sch. 2 para. 6)

#### [<sup>F852</sup>124A] Provision of information by Registrar General.

- (1) The Registrar General may provide to the Secretary of State any information to which this section applies.
- (2) Any information provided under subsection (1) above shall be provided in such form as appears to the Registrar General appropriate for the purpose of assisting the Secretary of State in the performance of his functions in relation to the health service.
- (3) This section applies to any information—
- entered in any register kept under the <sup>M56</sup>Births and Deaths Registration Act 1953; or
  - which is kept by the Registrar General under any other enactment and relates to any birth or death.

*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (4) In subsection (3) above, “enactment” includes an enactment contained in subordinate legislation.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F852** S. 124A inserted (1.10.1999) by 1999 c. 8, s. 42; S.I. 1999/2540, art. 2(1)(b), **Sch. 1**

#### Marginal Citations

**M56** 1953 c.20.

## 125 Protection of members and officers of authorities.

Section 265 of the <sup>M57</sup>Public Health Act 1875 (which relates to the protection of members and officers of certain authorities) has effect as if there were included in the authorities referred to in that section—

- [<sup>F853</sup>(za) a Strategic Health Authority;]
- [<sup>F854</sup>(a) a Health Authority,
- (b) a Special Health Authority, [<sup>F855</sup>and]
- [ a Local Health Board; and]
- <sup>F856</sup>(bbb)
- (c) an NHS trust,]

and as if any reference in that section to the Public Health Act 1875 included a reference to this Act [<sup>F857</sup>and the National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990].

#### Textual Amendments

**F853** S. 125(za) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 1(3), 42(3), **Sch. 1 Pt. 1 para. 31**; S.I. 2002/2478, **art. 3(1)(c)**

**F854** S. 125(a)-(c) substituted (28.6.1995 for certain purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) for s. 125(a)-(d) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), **Sch. 1 Pt. I para. 56** (with Sch. 2 para. 6)

**F855** Word in s. 125(b) repealed (10.10.2002 for W., otherwise prosp.) by virtue of National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 6(2), 42(3), **Sch. 5 para. 23**, Sch. 9 Pt. 1; S.I. 2002/2532, **art. 2** Sch.

**F856** S. 125(bbb) inserted (10.10.2002 for W., otherwise prosp.) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 6(2), 42(3), **Sch. 5 para. 23**; S.I. 2002/2532, **art. 2**, Sch.

**F857** Words added by National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990 (c. 19, SIF 113:2), s. 5(8), **Sch. 2 para. 25(b)**

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C90** s. 125 excluded by National Health Service (Amendment) Act 1986 (c. 66, SIF 113:2), **ss. 1(6)(8)**, 2(3)(4)

**C91** S. 125 extended (*temp.* from 28.6.1995 until 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, s. 3(9)(10) (with **Sch. 2 para. 6**)

#### Marginal Citations

**M57** 1875 c. 55(100:1).

*Status:* Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

## Supplementary

### 126 Orders and regulations, and directions.

- (1) Any power to make orders [<sup>F858</sup>, rules] or regulations conferred by this Act shall be exercisable by statutory instrument, and a statutory instrument made by virtue of this Act shall [<sup>F859</sup>, unless it is a PCT order [<sup>F860</sup> or an instrument made by the National Assembly for Wales] ,] be subject to annulment in pursuance of a resolution of either House of Parliament.

This subsection—

- <sup>F861</sup>(a) . . . . .  
(b) does not apply to [<sup>F862</sup>an order made under section 28EE(2) [<sup>F863</sup> or section 84A] above, paragraph 20, 21 or 23 of Schedule 5A to this Act [<sup>F864</sup>, paragraph 19, 20 or 22 of Schedule 5B to this Act] or to] paragraph 10 of Schedule 11 to this Act.

- (2) Any power to make regulations conferred on the Secretary of State by this Act [<sup>F865</sup> or Part I of the National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990] is, if the Treasury so directs, exercisable by the Treasury and the Secretary of state acting jointly, except in the case of—

- (a) regulations made under section 32 above;  
(b) regulations made under section 77(1) above in respect of charges for the drugs, medicines or appliances referred to in paragraph (a) of that subsection, or under paragraphs 1(1) of Schedule 12 to this Act [<sup>F865</sup> or Part I of the National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990] in respect of the remission or repayment of any charge payable under that section in the cases provided for in paragraph 1(1) of that Schedule;  
(c) regulations made under paragraph 2(2) of that Schedule;  
(d) regulations made under paragraph 2(6) of that Schedule.

- (3) Where under [<sup>F866</sup> or by virtue of] any provision of this Act [<sup>F865</sup> or Part I of the National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990]—

- (a) power to make an order may be exercisable, or  
(b) directions may be given,

that provision includes power to vary or revoke the order or direction, as the case may be, by subsequent order or by subsequent directions.

- [<sup>F867</sup>(3A) Directions given by the Secretary of State [<sup>F868</sup> or by a [<sup>F869</sup>Strategic Health Authority or] Health Authority] in pursuance of any provision of this Act or Part I of the <sup>M58</sup>National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990 shall be given by an instrument in writing.

- (3B) In relation to directions given in pursuance of [<sup>F870</sup>section 16BB or] sections [<sup>F871</sup>16D to 17B] above section 18 above applies in place of subsections (3) and (3A) above.]

- [<sup>F872</sup>(3C) Any person or body to whom directions are given in pursuance of any provision of this Act or Part I of the <sup>M59</sup>National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990 shall comply with the directions.]

- (4) Any power conferred by this Act [<sup>F865</sup> or Part I of the National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990] to make orders [<sup>F873</sup>, rules], regulations or schemes, and

*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

any power conferred by [<sup>F874</sup>section 16BB, 18][<sup>F875</sup>or 19A(7)] above to give directions by an instrument in writing, may unless the contrary intention appears, be exercised—

- (a) either in relation to all cases to which the power extends, or in relation to all those cases subject to specified exceptions, or in relation to any specified cases or classes of case, and
- (b) so as to make, as respects the cases in relation to which it is exercised—
  - (i) the full provision to which the power extends or any less provision (whether by way of exception or otherwise),
  - (ii) the same provision for all cases in relation to which the power is exercised, or different provision for different cases or different classes of case, or different provision as respects the same case or class of case for different purposes of this Act [<sup>F865</sup>or Part I of the National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990] or that section,
  - (iii) any such provision either unconditionally, or subject to any specified condition,

and includes power to make such [<sup>F876</sup>supplementary, incidental, consequential, transitory, transitional or saving] provision in the orders [<sup>F873</sup>, rules], regulations, schemes or directions as the persons making or giving them consider appropriate.

This subsection does not only apply to regulations made under section 32 above (but without prejudice to subsection (3) of that section) or to an order made under section 57 above (but without prejudice to paragraph 1(1) of Schedule 11 to this Act [<sup>F865</sup>or Part I of the National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990] )

- [<sup>F877</sup>(5) Without prejudice to the generality of subsection (4) above, any power which may be exercised as mentioned in paragraphs (a) and (b) of that subsection [<sup>F878</sup>(other than a power to make rules)] may make different provision for different areas.]

### Textual Amendments

- F858** Word in s. 126(1) inserted (1.10.2001 for certain purposes for E., 1.12.2001 for all other purposes for E. and 26.8.2002 for W.) by 2001 c. 15, ss. 67(1), 70(2), **Sch. 5 para. 5(13)(a)** (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)); S.I. 2001/3294, art. 4(1), **Sch. Pt. I** (subject to transitional provisions in Sch. Pt. II); S.I. 2002.1919, {art. 3(1)} (subject to art. (2))
- F859** Words in s. 126(1) inserted (4.1.2000 for E. and otherwise *prosp.*) by 1999 c. 8, ss. 65, 67, **Sch. 4 para. 37(2)(a)**; S.I. 1999/2342, art. 2(3)(a), **Sch. 2**
- F860** Words in s. 126(1) inserted (10.10.2002 for W.) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), **ss. 6(3)(a)(i)**, 42(3); S.I. 2002/2532, **art. 2**, Sch.
- F861** S. 126(1)(a) repealed (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, s. 5(1)(2), **Sch. 5** (with Sch. 2 para. 6)
- F862** Words in s. 126(1)(b) inserted (4.1.2000 for E. and otherwise *prosp.*) by 1999 c. 8, ss. 65, 67, **Sch. 4 para. 37(2)(b)**; S.I. 1999/2342, art. 2(3)(a), **Sch. 2**
- F863** Words in s. 126(1) inserted (1.8.2001 for E. and otherwise *prosp.*) by 2001 c. 15, **ss. 13(2)**, 70(2) (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)); S.I. 2001/2804 art. 2(1)(a)
- F864** Words in s. 126(1)(b) inserted (10.10.2002 for W.) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), **ss. 6(3)(a)(ii)**, 42(3); S.I. 2002/2532, **art. 2**, Sch.
- F865** Words inserted by National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990 (c. 19, SIF 113:2), **s. 65(2)**
- F866** Words in s. 126(3) inserted (15.8.1997) by 1997 c. 46, s. 41(10), **Sch. 2 para. 27**; S.I. 1997/1780, art. 2(1), **Sch.**
- F867** S. 126(3A)(3B) substituted (28.6.1995 for certain purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) for the second sentence of (3) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), **Sch. 1 Pt. I para. 57** (with Sch. 2 para. 6)
- F868** Words in s. 126(3A) inserted (4.1.2000 for E. and otherwise *prosp.*) by 1999 c. 8, ss. 65, 67, **Sch. 4 para. 37(3)**; S.I. 1999/2342, art. 2(3)(a), **Sch. 2**

**Status:** Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- F869** Words in s. 126(3A) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 1(3), 42(3), **Sch. 1 Pt. 1 para. 32**; S.I. 2002/2478, {art. 3(1)(c)}
- F870** Words in s. 126(3B) inserted (10.10.2002 for W.) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), {ss. 6(3)(b), 42(3); S.I. 2002/2532, **art. 2**, Sch.
- F871** Words in s. 126(3B) substituted (4.1.2000 for E. and otherwise *prosp.*) by 1999 c. 8, ss. 65, 67, **Sch. 4 para. 37(4)**; S.I. 1999/2342, art. 2(3)(a), **Sch. 2**
- F872** S. 126(3C) inserted (1.9.1999 for E. and 1.11.1999 for W.) by 1999 c. 8, s. 65, **Sch. 4 para. 37(5)**; S.I. 1999/2342, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**; S.I. 1999/3184, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**
- F873** Words in s. 126(4) inserted (1.10.2001 for certain purposes for E., 1.12.2001 for all other purposes for E. and 26.8.2002 for W.) by 2001 c. 15, ss. 67(1), 70(2), Sch. 5 para. 5(13)(b) (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)); S.I. 2001/3294, art. 4(1), Sch. Pt. I (subject to transitional provisions in Sch. Pt. II); S.I. 2002/1919, **art. 3(1)** (subject to art. 3(2))
- F874** Words in s. 126(4) substituted (10.10.2002 for W.) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), {ss. 6(3)(c), 42(3); S.I. 2002/2532, **art. 2**, Sch.
- F875** Words in s. 126(4) inserted (10.10.2002 for W., otherwise *prosp.*) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 37(1), 42(3), **Sch. 8 para. 10(a)**; S.I. 2002/2532, **art. 2**, Sch.
- F876** Words in s. 126(4) substituted (1.9.1999 for E. and 1.11.1999 for W.) by 1999 c. 8, s. 65, **Sch. 4 para. 37(6)**; S.I. 1999/2342, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**; S.I. 1999/3184, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1**
- F877** S. 126(5) added by National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990 (c. 19, SIF 113:2), **s. 65(2)**
- F878** Words in s. 126(5) inserted (1.10.2001 for certain purposes for E., 1.12.2001 for all other purposes for E. and 26.8.2002 for W.) by 2001 c. 15, ss. 67(1), 70(2), Sch. 5 para. 5(13)(d) (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)); S.I. 2001/3294, art. 4(1), Sch. Pt. I (subject to transitional provisions in Sch. Pt. II); S.I. 2002/1919, **art. 3(1)** (subject to art. 3(2))

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C92** S. 126 applied (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1968 c. 46, **s. 63(5A)** (as inserted (28.6.1995 for specified purposes and otherwise 1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, ss. 2(1)(3), 8(1), Sch. 1 Pt. III para. 95(2)(c) (with **Sch. 2 para. 6**)
- C93** S. 126(4)(5) applied (3.8.1999 for E. and W. and otherwise 1.10.1999) by 1999 c. 8, **ss. 62(4)(5)**, 67; S.I. 1999/2177, **art. 2(1)**; S.S.I. 1999/90, art. 2(a), **Sch. 1**
- C94** S. 126(4)(5) extended (28.6.1995) by 1995 c. 17, **s. 6(6)** (with Sch. 2 para. 6)
- C95** S. 126(4) extended by Health and Social Security Act 1984 (c. 48, SIF 113:1), **s. 28(3)**

#### Marginal Citations

- M58** 1990 c. 19.  
**M59** S.I. 1990 c.19.

## 127 Supplementary regulatory powers.

Regulations may provide for all or any of the following matters—

- (a) for prescribing the forms and manner of service of notices and other documents;
- (b) for prescribing the manner in which documents may be executed or proved;
- (c) for prescribing the manner in which resolutions of any bodies (except the Public Health Laboratory Service Board) continued in being by this Act are to be proved;
- (d) for exempting judges and justices of the peace from disqualification by their liability to rates.



*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**128 Interpretation and construction.**

(1) In this Act [<sup>F879</sup>and Part I of the National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990], unless the contrary intention appears—

F880

...

F881

.....

F882

.....

[<sup>F883</sup>“dental corporation” has the meaning given by section 35(5);]

“dental practitioner” means a person registered in the dentists register under the <sup>M60</sup>Dentists Act [<sup>F884</sup>1984];

[<sup>F885</sup>“disabled persons” means persons who are blind, deaf or dumb or who suffer from mental disorder of any description and other persons who are substantially and permanently handicapped by illness, injury or congenital deformity or such other disability as may be prescribed;]

[<sup>F886</sup>“dispensing optician” means a person who is registered in the register kept under section 2 of the <sup>M61</sup>Opticians Act 1958 of dispensing opticians or a body corporate enrolled in the list kept under section 4 of that Act of such bodies carrying on business as dispensing opticians;]

“equipment” includes any machinery, apparatus or appliance, whether fixed or not, and any vehicle;

[<sup>F887</sup>“the FHSAA” means the Family Health Services Appeal Authority;]

“functions” included powers and duties;

F888

...

F880

.....

“the health service” means the health service established in pursuance of [<sup>F889</sup>section 1 of the <sup>M62</sup>National Health Service Act 1946 and continued under] section 1(1) above;

[<sup>F890</sup>“health service body” has the same meaning as in section 4 of the <sup>M63</sup>National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990;]

“health service hospital” means a hospital vested in the Secretary of State [<sup>F891</sup>for the purposes of his functions] under this Act [<sup>F892</sup>or vested in [<sup>F893</sup>a Primary Care Trust or] an NHS trust];

[<sup>F894</sup>“high security psychiatric services” has the meaning given by section 4 above]

F881

.....

“hospital” means—

- (a) any institution for the reception and treatment of persons suffering from illness,
- (b) any maternity home, and
- (c) any institution for the reception and treatment of persons during convalescence or persons requiring medical rehabilitation,

and includes clinics, dispensaries and out-patient departments maintained in connection with any such home or institution, and hospital accommodation shall be construed accordingly;

“illness” includes mental disorder within the meaning of [<sup>F895</sup>the <sup>M64</sup>Mental Health Act 1983] and any injury or disability requiring medical or dental treatment or nursing;

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

“local authority” means a county council, . . . <sup>F896</sup>a district council, [<sup>F897</sup>a county borough council,] a London borough council, and the Common Council of the City of London; <sup>F898</sup> . . .

“local education authority” has the same meaning as in the [<sup>F899</sup>the Education Act 1996];

“local social services authority” means the council of a non-metropolitan county, [<sup>F900</sup>of a county borough] or of a metropolitan district or London borough, or the Common Council of the City of London;

“medical” includes surgical;

[<sup>F890</sup>“medical list” has the meaning given by section 29A(6);]

[<sup>F901</sup>“medical practitioner” means a registered medical practitioner within the meaning of Schedule 1 to the <sup>M65</sup>Interpretation Act 1978]

“medicine” includes such chemical re-agents as are included in a list for the time being approved by the Secretary of State for the purposes of section 41 above;

“modifications” includes additions, omissions and amendments;

[<sup>F902</sup>“NHS contract” has the meaning assigned by section 4(1) of the National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990;

“National Health Service trust” has the meaning assigned by section 5 of the National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990 and “NHS trust” shall be construed accordingly]

“officer” includes servant;

[<sup>F903</sup>“operational date”, in relation to an NHS trust, shall be construed in accordance with paragraph 3(1)(e) of Schedule 2 to the National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990]

“ophthalmic optician” means a person registered in either of the registers kept under [<sup>F904</sup>section 7 of the Opticians Act 1989] of ophthalmic opticians or a body corporate enrolled in the list kept under [<sup>F905</sup>section 9] of that Act of such bodies carrying on business as ophthalmic opticians;

“patient” includes an expectant or nursing mother and a lying-in woman;

[<sup>F890</sup>“personal dental services” has the meaning given in section 28C(7);]

[<sup>F890</sup>“personal medical services” (except in section 29) has the meaning given in section 28C(7);]

[<sup>F906</sup>“pharmaceutical services” has the meaning assigned by section 41 of this Act]

“prescribed” means prescribed by regulations made by the Secretary of State under this Act [<sup>F907</sup>or Part I of the National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990;]

[<sup>F908</sup>“PCT order” has the meaning given by section 16A above]

[<sup>F909</sup>“primary functions” shall be construed in accordance with section 3 of the National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990]

“property” includes rights; . . . <sup>F882</sup>

“registered pharmacist” means a pharmacist registered in the register of pharmaceutical chemists;

“regulations” means regulations made by the Secretary of State under this Act [<sup>F910</sup>or Part I of the National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990];

<sup>F911</sup>  
. . .

*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

“superannuation benefits” means annual superannuation allowances, gratuities and periodical payments payable on retirement, death or incapacity, and similar benefits;

[<sup>F912</sup>“terms of service” means the terms upon which by virtue of regulations a person undertakes to provide general medical services, general dental services, general ophthalmic services or pharmaceutical services.]

“university” includes a university college;

[<sup>F913</sup>“voluntary organisation” means a body the activities of which are carried on otherwise than for profit, but does not include any public or local authority;]

F881

[<sup>F914</sup>(1A) So far as is necessary or expedient in consequence of a direction under section 16D or 17A above providing for the exercise by a [<sup>F915</sup>Strategic Health Authority,] Health Authority, Special Health Authority or Primary Care Trust of a function exercisable by another person, any reference in any enactment, instrument or other document to that other person is to be read as a reference to the [<sup>F915</sup>Strategic Health Authority,] Health Authority, Special Health Authority or Primary Care Trust.]

(2) References in this Act to the purposes of a hospital shall be construed as referring both to the general purposes of the hospital and to any specific purpose of the hospital.

(3) Any reference in this Act to any enactment is a reference to it as amended or applied by or under any other enactment including this Act.

#### Textual Amendments

**F879** Words inserted by [National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990 \(c. 19, SIF 113:2\)](#), s. 26(2)

**F880** Definitions of “District Health Authority” and “health authority” in s. 128(1) repealed (1.4.1996) by [1995 c. 17, s. 5\(1\)\(2\)](#), [Sch. 3](#) (with [Sch. 2](#) para. 6)

**F881** Definition repealed by [Health Services Act 1980 \(c. 53, SIF 113:2\)](#), [Sch. 2](#), para. 10, [Sch. 7](#)

**F882** Definition repealed by [Nurses, Midwives and Health Visitors Act 1979 \(c. 36, SIF 83:1\)](#), [Sch. 7](#), para. 28, [Sch. 8](#)

**F883** S. 128(1): Definition of “dental corporation” inserted (22.11.2001 for E. and 1.7.2002 for W.) by [2001 c. 15, ss. 22\(5\), 70\(2\)](#) (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)); S.I. 2001/3738, art. 2(1), [Sch. 1 Pt. I](#); S.I. 2002/1475, [art. 2](#), [Sch. Pt. 1](#)

**F884** Words substituted by [Dentists Act 1984 \(c. 24, SIF 83:1\)](#), s. 54(1), [Sch. 5 para. 9](#)

**F885** Definition inserted by [Health and Social Services and Social Security Adjudications Act 1983 \(c. 41, SIF 113:3\)](#), s. 29(1), [Sch. 9 Pt. I para. 22](#)

**F886** Definition repealed (*prosp.*) by [Health and Social Security Act 1984 \(c. 48, SIF 113:3\)](#), ss. 24, 27(1), [Sch. 8 Pt. I](#)

**F887** S. 128(1): Definition of “the FHSAA” inserted (1.10.2001 for certain purposes for E., 1.12.2001 for all other purposes for E. and 26.8.2002 for W.) by [2001 c. 15, ss. 27\(3\), 70\(2\)](#) (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)); S.I. 2001/3294, [art. 4\(1\)](#), [Sch. Pt. I](#) (subject to transitional provisions in [Sch. Pt. II](#)); S.I. 2002/1919, [art. 3\(1\)](#), [Sch. Pt. II](#) (subject to [art. 3\(2\)](#))

**F888** Definition of “fund-holding practice” in s. 128(1) repealed (1.10.1999 for E. and otherwise 1.4.2000) by [1999 c. 8, s. 65](#), [Sch. 5](#); S.I. 1999/2540, [art. 2\(1\)](#), [Sch. 1](#); S.I. 2000/1041, [art. 2\(d\)](#), [Sch.](#)

**F889** Words inserted by [Health Services Act 1980 \(c. 53, SIF 113:2\)](#), [Sch. 1](#), para. 77(c)

**F890** Definitions in s. 128(1) inserted (1.4.1998 for specified purposes and otherwise 10.12.1998) by [1997 c. 46, s. 41\(10\)](#), [Sch. 2 para. 28](#); S.I. 1998/631, [art. 2\(b\)](#), [Sch. 2](#) (with arts. 3-5); S.I. 1998/2840, [art. 2\(3\)](#), [Sch.](#) (with [art. 3](#))

**F891** Words inserted by [Health Services Act 1980 \(c. 53, SIF 113:2\)](#), [Sch. 1](#), para. 77(d)

*Status:* Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- F892** Words inserted by National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990 (c. 19, SIF 113:2), s. 26(2)(c)
- F893** Words in the definition of “health service hospital” in s. 128(1) inserted (4.1.2000 for E. and otherwise *prosp.*) by 1999 c. 8, ss. 65, 67, **Sch. 4 para. 38(2)(a)**; S.I. 1999/2342, art. 2(3)(a), **Sch. 2**
- F894** Definition of “high security psychiatric services” in s. 128(1) inserted (1.4.2000) by 1999 c. 8, s. 65, **Sch. 4 para. 38(2)(b)**; S.I. 1999/2793, art. 2(3)(a), **Sch. 3**
- F895** Words substituted by Mental Health Act 1983 (c. 20, SIF 85), s. 148, **Sch. 4 para. 47(d)**
- F896** Words repealed by Local Government Act 1985 (c. 51, SIF 81:1), s. 102(2), **Sch. 17**
- F897** Words in the definition of “local authority” in s. 128(1) inserted (1.4.1996) by 1994 c. 19, s. 22(4), **Sch. 10 para. 11(3)(a)** (with ss. 54(5)(7), 55(5), Sch. 17 paras. 22(1), 23(2)); S.I. 1996/396, art. 3, **Sch. 1**
- F898** Words in the definition of “local authority” in s. 128(1) repealed (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 17, s. 5(1)(2), **Sch. 3** (with Sch. 2 para. 6)
- F899** Words in the definition of “local education authority” in s. 128(1) substituted (1.11.1996) by 1996 c. 56, ss. 582(1), 583(1), **Sch. 37 para. 45** (with s. 1(4), Sch. 39)
- F900** Words in the definition of “local social services authority” in s. 128(1) inserted (1.4.1996) by 1994 c. 19, s. 22(4), **Sch. 10 para. 11(3)(b)** (with ss. 54(4)(7), 55(5), Sch. 17 paras. 22(1), 23(2)); S.I. 1996/396, art. 3, **Sch. 1**
- F901** Definition substituted by Medical Act 1983 (c. 45, SIF 83:1), s. 56(1), **Sch. 5 para. 16(b)**
- F902** Definitions inserted (the insertion not being in force until 1.4.1991 so far as it relates to the definition of “NHS contract”) by National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990 (c. 19, SIF 113:2), s. 26(2)(d)
- F903** Definition inserted by National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990 (c. 19, SIF 113:2), s. 26(2)(e)
- F904** Words substituted by Opticians Act 1989 (c. 44, SIF 83:1), s. 37(1)(a)
- F905** Words substituted by Opticians Act 1989 (c. 44, SIF 83:1), s. 37(1)(b)
- F906** Definition inserted by National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990 (c. 19, SIF 113:2), s. 26(2)(f)
- F907** Words inserted by National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990 (c. 19, SIF 113:2), s. 26(2)(g)
- F908** Definition of “PCT order” in s. 128(1) inserted (4.1.2000 for E. and otherwise *prosp.*) by 1999 c. 8, ss. 65, 67, **Sch. 4 para. 38(2)(c)**; S.I. 1999/2342, art. 2(3)(a), **Sch. 2**
- F909** Definition inserted (1.4.1991) by National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990 (c. 19, SIF 113:2), s. 26(2)(h)
- F910** Words inserted by National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990 (c. 19, SIF 113:2), s. 26(2)(i)
- F911** Definition of “special hospital” in s. 128(1) repealed (1.4.2000) by 1999 c. 8, s. 65, **Sch. 5**; S.I. 1999/2793, art. 2(3)(a), **Sch. 3**
- F912** S. 128(1): Definition of “terms of service” inserted (22.11.2001 for certain purposes for E., 14.12.2001 for all other purposes (except those relating to the provision of pharmaceutical services under the 1977 Act) for E. and otherwise *prosp.*) by 2001 c. 15, ss. 67(1), 70(2), **Sch. 5 Pt. 1 para. 5(14)** (with ss. 64(9), 65(4)); S.I. 2001/3738, art. 2(2), **Sch. 1 Pt. II**
- F913** Definition substituted by Health Services Act 1980 (c. 53, SIF 113:2), **Sch. 1**, para. 77(e)
- F914** S. 128(1A) inserted (1.9.1999 for E. for specified purposes, 1.12.1999 for W. for specified purposes, 4.1.2000 for E. for other specified purposes and otherwise *prosp.*) by 1999 c. 8, ss. 65, 67, **Sch. 4 para. 38(3)**; S.I. 1999/2342, art. 2(1)(3)(a), Schs. 1, 2; S.I. 1999/3184, art. 2(2), **Sch. 2**
- F915** Words in s. 128(1A) inserted (1.10.2002) by National Health Service Reform and Health Care Professions Act 2002 (c. 17), ss. 1(3), 42(3), **Sch. 1 Pt. 1 para. 33**; S.I. 2002/2478, art. 3(1)(c)

#### Marginal Citations

- M60** 1984 c. 24(83:1).  
**M61** 1958 c. 32(83:1).  
**M62** 1946 c. 81.

*Status: Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- M63** 1990 c. 19.  
**M64** 1983 c. 20(85).  
**M65** 1978 c. 30(115:1).

## 129 Transitional provisions and savings, consequential amendments, and repeals.

Schedule 14 to this Act is hereby given effect, and subject to the transitional provisions and savings contained in that Schedule—

- (a) the enactments and the Order specified in Schedule 15 to this Act have effect subject to the amendments (being amendments consequent on this Act) specified in that Schedule, and

- (b) ..... <sup>F916</sup>

but nothing in this Act shall be taken as prejudicing the operation of [<sup>F917</sup>sections 16(1) and 17(2)(a) of the <sup>M66</sup>Interpretation Act 1978] (which relates to the operation of repeals).

### Textual Amendments

**F916** S. 129(b) repeals enactments specified in Sch. 16

**F917** Words substituted by virtue of [Interpretation Act 1978 \(c. 30, SIF 115:1\)](#), s. 25(2)

### Marginal Citations

**M66** 1978 c. 30(115:1).

## 130 Short title, extent and commencement.

- (1) This Act may be cited as the National Health Service Act 1977.
- (2) This Act does not extend to Scotland, except as is mentioned in paragraph 3 of Schedule 11 to this Act.
- (3) The following provisions only of this Act apply to Northern Ireland—
  - (a) this subsection and subsections (1) above and (5) below;
  - (b) section 57 above and Schedule 11 to this Act;
  - <sup>F918</sup>(c) .....
  - (d) paragraph 13 of Schedule 14 to this Act so far as it relates to any enactment which extends to Northern Ireland;
  - (e) paragraph (a) of section 129 above and Schedule 15 to this Act so far as they amend any enactment and order which extends to Northern Ireland;
  - (f) paragraph (b) of section 129 and Schedule 16 to this Act so far as they repeal any enactment which extends to Northern Ireland.
- (4) The Secretary of State may by order provide that this Act shall extend to the Isles of Scilly with such modifications, if any, as are specified in the order, and except as provided in pursuance of this subsection this Act does not extend to the Isles of Scilly.

The Secretary of State may by any such order amend or repeal any provisions contained in the Isles of Scilly Orders 1927 to 1943.

- (5) This Act shall come into force on the expiry of the period of one month beginning on the date of its passing.

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** There are outstanding changes not yet made by the [legislation.gov.uk](http://legislation.gov.uk) editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

---

**Textual Amendments**

**F918** S. 130(3)(c) repealed (5.2.1994) by 1993 c. 46, ss. 20, 22(4), **Sch. 3**

---

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C96** S. 130(4) extended by [Mental Health Act 1983 \(c. 20, SIF 85\)](#), **s. 149(4)**



**Status:**

Point in time view as at 29/11/2002. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:**

There are outstanding changes not yet made by the legislation.gov.uk editorial team to National Health Service Act 1977. Any changes that have already been made by the team appear in the content and are referenced with annotations.